GE Healthcare Life Sciences

# UNICORN™ 6.1 Method Manual





## Table of Contents

1	1.1 1.2 1.3	About the UNICORN Method Editor About the UNICORN Method Editor About this manual UNICORN 6.1 user documentation	7 8 10 12
2	<b>The U</b> 2.1 2.2	NICORN Method Editor The Method Editor Methods in UNICORN 6.1	<b>13</b> 14 20
3	Create 3.1 3.2 3.3 3.3.1 3.3.2 3.4 3.5 3.6 3.7 3.8 3.9 3.10 3.11	e and edit methods	25 26 30 34 35 43 51 63 69 79 81 89 92 94
4	<b>Scout</b> 4.1 4.2	ing       1         Overview       1         Set up and edit a Scouting scheme       1	03 104 106
5	Design 5.1 5.2 5.2.1 5.2.2 5.2.3 5.2.4 5.3 5.4.1 5.4.2 5.4.3 5.4.4 5.4.3 5.4.4 5.4.5 5.4.6 5.4.7	n of Experiments       1         Introduction to Design of Experiments       1         Create an experimental design       1         Set up an experimental design       1         Add responses and factors to an experimental design       1         Change design and design settings in a Design of Experiments setup       1         Divide the DoE runs into several scouting runs       1         Run a scouting created with DoE       1         Evaluation of Design of Experiments       1         Morkflow       1         Generate model       1         Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis       1         Ledit the model       1         Use the model       1         Create and print reports       1	<b>16</b> .17 .28 .29 .38 .45 .45 .55 .57 .58 .60 .70 .82 .90 .93 .200

6	Buffe	erPro	203
	6.1	BufferPro - Overview	204
	6.2	Create a method using BufferPro	206
	6.3	Create and edit BufferPro recipes	207
	6.3.1	Create and edit a BufferPro recipe	208
	6.3.2	Rename a BufferPro recipe	212
	6.3.3	Delete a BufferPro recipe	214
	6.4	Print a BufferPro recipe	216
	6.5	Calculate buffer composition using BufferPro	219
	6.6	Export and import BufferPro recipes	222
	6.7	Predefined BufferPro recipes	226
7	Meth	od queues	229
	71	Method queues - overview	230
	72	Create a method queue	231
	7.3	Edit a method queue	235
8	Colu	mn Handling	241
•	81	Overview	2/12
	8.2	Handling column types	242
	0.2 8 3	Handling individual columns	247
	0.J 8 3 1	Individual column identification	261
	832	Register a new individual column	262
	833	Find an individual column	266
	0.J.J 8 7 /i	Edit individual columns	268
	0.J.4 8 3 5	Event and import individual columns	200
	836	Print and view individual column information	271
	0.J.U 8 /i	Column performance	274
	0.4 8 5	Intelligent Packing of AviChromIM columns	270
	0.5		219
9	Text	edit methods	286
	9.1		287
	9.1.1	Working with text instructions	288
	9.1.2	The Text Instructions pane	290
	9.2	Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane	295
	9.2.1	Base instruction	296
	9.2.2	Working with phases and blocks	300
	9.2.3	Working with text instructions	309
	9.2.4	Method variables	315
	9.3	Specific instructions	326
	9.3.1	Gradients and eluent concentrations	327
	9.3.2	Alarm instructions	330
	9.3.3	Watch instructions	333
	9.3.4	Pause or hold a method	340
	9.3.5	Messages and Set marks	343

10	Trou	bleshooting	346
	10.1	Troubleshooting methods	347
	10.2	System Error Reports	353
	Inde	×	358

# 1 Introducing the UNICORN Method Editor

## Introduction

This chapter contains:

- A general introduction to creating methods using the UNICORN software.
- Information about the user documentation for UNICORN, including an overview of related documents describing the use of the software.

# Software declaration of conformity

UNICORN 6.1 is technically compatible with all relevant sections of FDA 21 CFR Part 11.

A part 11-system assessment checklist is available on request through the local GEHC representative.

## In this chapter

This chapter contains these sections:

Section	See page
1.1 About the UNICORN Method Editor	8
1.2 About this manual	10
1.3 UNICORN 6.1 user documentation	12

## 1.1 About the UNICORN Method Editor

## Introduction

This section is a brief introduction to creating methods in UNICORN and a description of the scope of this manual.

### What is UNICORN?

UNICORN is a complete software package for:

- control and supervision of chromatography systems.
- evaluation and analysis of the results from separation runs.

This manual describes UNICORN 6.1, which is designed for ÄKTA™ avant chromatography systems. This software version is not compatible with other ÄKTA systems.

### Workflow

The workflow in UNICORN can be divided into four distinct stages. The flow chart below shows the work flow stages.



This manual describes step 1 of this workflow.

**Tip:** Step 2, how to perform method runs, is described in the "ÄKTA avant and UNICORN 6.1 User Manual". Step 3, evaluate the results, and step 4, compile a report, are described in the "UNICORN 6.1 Evaluation Manual".

### Create a method

A method in UNICORN is a user-defined set of instructions that can be used to run an entire process on a system, for example a purification run or a column performance test. A method is comprised of one or several phases which are reusable sets of instructions. Examples of phases are equilibration steps and elution steps.

The UNICORN *Method Editor* module is a comprehensive tool for creating or editing phases and methods. UNICORN is delivered with templates for common procedures that can easily be edited for a specific process. Using the Method Editor it is possible to:

- build a method from a library of phases.
- create custom phases.
- create method queues to run multiple methods on up to three separate systems.
- keep track of column types or individual columns using the **Column Handling** tool.
- design and optimize purification schemes using the *Design of Experiments* and *Scouting* tools.
- automatically mix and titrate buffers using the *BufferPro* tool. etc.

## 1.2 About this manual

## Introduction

This section describes the purpose of the manual, the general structure and conventions applied in the text, and some prerequisites that should be fulfilled before you start to apply any of the procedures described in the following chapters.

## The purpose of the UNICORN Method Manual

The purpose of the UNICORN Method Manual is to provide a comprehensive guide to creating methods that can be run on an ÄKTA avant system. It covers the features and tools included in the Method Editor module of the UNICORN software with practical instructions.

The manual covers the following:

- how to create methods and phases.
- how to use **BufferPro**.
- how to design and optimize experiments using **Design of Experiments** and **Scouting**.
- how to use method queues.
- how to handle column types and individual columns.
- how to convert and scale methods created for ÄKTA avant 25 systems to be used with ÄKTA avant 150 systems (or conversely).

For advanced users, an overview of how to edit methods at the level of individual instructions is also given.

Note: The Method Manual does not describe the functions of every command in all panes and dialogs of the user interface. Refer to the online help for information about commands that are not described in this manual. The online help in the *Method Editor* module is accessed either by clicking Help buttons in software dialogs, by pressing the F1 key, or selecting *Help:Help for Method Editor*.

### **Document structure**

Each chapter starts with a brief overview that presents the contents and the headings for the sections that the chapter contains. Most sections begin with an introduction that summarizes the content. Some sections are divided into sub-sections, each with an overview of the contents.

A section is divided into blocks of information with separating lines. The blocks are identified by a label extending into the margin (such as the label Document Structure above). This makes it easier for you to quickly scan a page to find the exact topic you are looking for.

## **Typographical conventions**

Menu commands, field names and other text items from the software are quoted exactly as they appear on the screen, in a bold italic typeface:

#### Example: Method Navigator

Search paths are shown in a bold italic typeface with a separating colon between each level:

*Example*: *Edit:Import:Import Phase...* i.e., the menu option *Import Phase...* in the submenu *Import* from the *Edit*-menu.

Controls on the instrument, computer or keyboard keys are shown with a bold, regular typeface:

Example: Press the Delete key.

Text that the user must either type exactly as shown in the manual, or that UNICORN displays as a response (not a regular part of the graphic user interface), is represented by a monotype typeface within quotation marks:

Example: "Connection change"

## **Prerequisites**

The following prerequisites must be fulfilled before you can use this manual the way it is intended:

- You need to have a general understanding of how your PC and Windows™ work. In most cases universal computer functions will not be explained.
- UNICORN must be installed and configured correctly on your computer.
- Your user profile and access rights must be set up, and you must be able to log on to UNICORN and access a database.
- You need to understand the general concepts of liquid chromatography. Terminology and functionalities will be explained only when they differ from normal practice.

## 1.3 UNICORN 6.1 user documentation

## Introduction

This section describes the user documentation that is delivered with an ÄKTA avant system.

## **User documentation**

The user documentation listed in the table below is available from the *Help* menu in UNICORN or on the ÄKTA avant and UNICORN User Documentation CD.

Document	Main contents
ÄKTA avant and UNICORN 6.1 Installation Guide	Site preparation, stand-alone installation and test procedure.
Getting Started with ÄKTA avant and UNICORN 6.1	System overview and instructions to perform a basic run.
ÄKTA avant and UNICORN 6.1 User Manual	Instructions for safe handling of the system. Descrip- tions of components. Information about how to run and maintain the system.
UNICORN Help	Dialog descriptions for UNICORN (from the <i>Help</i> menu).
UNICORN 6.1 Method Manual	Overview and detailed descriptions of the method creation features in UNICORN. Instructions on how to use the software. Workflow descriptions for common operations.
UNICORN 6.1 Evaluation Man- ual	Overview and detailed descriptions of the evaluation features in UNICORN. Instructions on how to use the software. Workflow descriptions for common operations.
UNICORN 6.1 Administration and Technical Manual	Network setup and complete software installation. Administration of UNICORN and the UNICORN database.

# 2 The UNICORN Method Editor

## About this chapter

This chapter gives an introduction to the *Method Editor* in UNICORN 6.1. It gives a brief description of the *Method Editor* interface and describes the concept of methods in UNICORN 6.1.

For information about how to create, open and edit methods as well as signing methods and importing/exporting methods, see *Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25*.

### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	See page
2.1 The Method Editor	14
2.2 Methods in UNICORN 6.1	20

## 2.1 The Method Editor

## Introduction

The *Method Editor* provides complete facilities for:

- creating and editing methods
- copying, saving and deleting methods
- converting methods for use with different types of ÄKTA avant systems (e.g. from an ÄKTA avant 25 system to an ÄKTA avant 150 system)

The **Method Editor** also provides a number of tools to assist the user in optimizing runs and a tool for handling column types and individual columns (see below for more information). Functions like signing methods electronically and importing/exporting methods are also included.

## **Tools in the Method Editor**

The table below describes the different tools included in the *Method Editor*.

ТооІ	Description
Design of experiment ( <b>DoE</b> )	<b>DoE</b> is used to find out, in a systematic way, which run parameters affect a process to be run and how to find optimal values for these parameters to obtain the best possible result using a minimum number of runs.
	When creating a method and setting up an experimental design using <b>DoE</b> , an optimized <b>Scouting scheme</b> will automatically be created.
	See Chapter 5 Design of Experiments, on page 116 for more information.
Scouting	<i>Scouting</i> is used to repeat a series of <i>Method runs</i> auto- matically, where the user can change the values of prede- termined variables before starting the method. A <i>Scouting</i> <i>scheme</i> is defined as part of the method.
	See Chapter 4 Scouting, on page 103 for more information.

ТооІ	Description
BufferPro	<b>BufferPro</b> allows a buffer of defined pH, and with defined salt concentrations to be prepared from four stock solutions (one Buffer stock solution, one Titrant, Water and a Salt stock solution). pH and salt concentration can be used as variable scouting parameters included in a <b>Scouting scheme</b> or in a <b>Design of Experiments (DoE)</b> . <b>BufferPro</b> is optimized for cation and anion exchange chromatography, but can also be used when running other chromatographic techniques. See Chapter 6 BufferPro, on page 203 for more information.
Column Handling	<b>Column Handling</b> enables handling of column types and individual columns. See <i>Chapter 8 Column Handling, on page 241</i> for more information.

## Illustration of the Method Editor

The basic *Method Editor* interface consists of two panes, the *Method outline* and the *Phase Properties/Text Instructions* pane.

By default, the **Toolbar**, **Phase Library** pane and **Gradient** pane are also displayed in the **Method Editor**. The display of these panes is however optional. Two more panes may be displayed in the **Method Editor**, the **Method Navigator** and **Flow Scheme**.

The illustration below shows the *Method Editor* with all the optional panes displayed.

#### 2 The UNICORN Method Editor

2.1 The Method Editor



Area	Description	
1	<i>Method Navigator</i> (optional pane): Shows all the user folders, methods and method queues that are available in the database.	
2	Phase Library (optional pane): Contains all available phases.	
3	Method Outline: Shows the phases included in the opened method.	
4	<i>Phase Properties</i> tab: Select to display the <i>Phase Properties</i> . <i>Phase Properties</i> shows the settings for the highlighted phase in the <i>Method Outline</i> .	

Area	Description
5	Text Instructions tab: Select to display the Text Instructions. Text Instruc- tions shows the method in a text format. The illustration below shows the Text Instructions pane.
6	Toolbar (optional pane): Shows the toolbar icons.
7	<i>Gradient</i> (optional pane): Shows the programmed gradient and break points for included phases and blocks.
8	<i>Flow Scheme</i> (optional pane): Illustrates the flow path of the instrument graphically.
Note:	For detailed information on the <b>Toolbar</b> and the different panes in the <b>Method Editor</b> , see "Getting Help on the Toolbar and panes in the Method Editor" below.

## **Display optional panes**

The optional panes in the *Method Editor* are displayed by selecting them in the *View* menu. To restore the appearance of the *Method Editor* to display the default panes, select *Restore to Default* in the *View* menu. Then, the *Toolbar*, *Gradient* and *Phase Library* are displayed. The appearance of the optional panes can also be controlled using the *Auto Hide* function (see below for more information).

**Note:** Settings made by a user are automatically remembered by the software next time the same user opens the *Method Editor*.

The illustration below shows the *View* menu with the default panes selected.

#### 2 The UNICORN Method Editor 2.1 The Method Editor

Viev	v
~	Toolbar
	Method Navigator
~	Gradient
~	Phase Library
	Flow Scheme
	Restore to Default
	Nostore to berdak

## Auto Hide optional panes

The optional panes may either be displayed statically in the position where they open, or the *Auto Hide* function can be selected to automatically hide/display the pane when moving the mouse pointer over the pane.

The table below describes how to turn on the *Auto Hide* function and how to hide/display, in this example, the *Method Navigator* pane.

#### Step Action

1 If not already displayed, open the *Method Navigator* in the *Method Editor* by selecting *View:Method Navigator*.

Result: The Method Navigator pane is displayed.



2

To turn on the **Auto Hide** function, click the vertical pin symbol in the top righthand corner.



*Result:* The pin symbol is rotated to horizontal position and a tab named *Method Navigator* is displayed to the left.

Method N	Method Navigator		+⊨ X
	Open 🍗 🦨	Methods, Metho	od Qi 🔻 🗐 🕶
	Folder name	Syster	m Last mod
avig	😑 📕 UNICORN Da	tabase	
lator	🗷 🚞 Anita		1/14/20(
-	🗉 📄 Anna		12/1/20(

Step	Action
3	Click outside the <i>Method Navigator</i> .
	<i>Result</i> : The <b>Method Navigator</b> is hidden and only the <b>Method Navigator</b> tab is displayed.
	Method Settings Equilibration
4	<ul> <li>To display the <i>Method Navigator</i> again, move the mouse pointer over the <i>Method Navigator</i> tab.</li> </ul>
	• To turn off the <b>Auto Hide</b> function, click the horizontal pin symbol in the top righthand corner of the <b>Method Navigator</b> pane.

Result: The Method Navigator pane is displayed statically.

# Getting help on the Toolbar and panes in the Method Editor

The table below describes how to find detailed information about the **Toolbar** and the different panes in the **Method Editor** by opening the Online Help.

#### Step Action

1 To display detailed information about the **Toolbar** and different panes in the **Method Editor** interface, select **Help:Help For Method Editor**.

Help		
	H	Help For Method Editor
	C	Contextual Help F1
	Ι	nstruction Set
	ŕ	bout UNICORN

Result: The online help opens displaying the Method Editor help start page.

2 To display help for a specific pane, click in the pane and press the **F1** keyboard key.

*Result:* The online help page describing that pane is opened.

## 2.2 Methods in UNICORN 6.1

## About methods

The program instructions for a chromatography run are defined in a *Method*. The instructions are specific for each instrument configuration and component set up and follow certain syntactical and hierarchical rules.

Instructions are combined into blocks. Individual instructions and minor blocks are combined into the major method blocks, called *Phases*. Each phase reflects a step in the chromatography run, for example, equilibration or sample application. A number of settings are available for each type of phase. By building methods in this way, methods are easily created and edited.

See *Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25* for information about creating and editing methods in the **Method Editor**.

The illustration below shows the phases in a method in the *Method Outline* and the corresponding settings for the highlighted phase in the *Phase Properties* pane.

Method Settings	Method Settings	
Equilibration	Column selection Show by technique Affinity	Result Name & Location Start Protocol
	Column type Any	Method Notes
	Column volume 0.100 ml	
Sample Application	Pressure limit pre-column 20.00 MPa [0.02 - 20.00]	Unit selection
	Pressure limit delta-column 20.00 MPa [0.02 - 20.00]	Method Base Unit CV 💌
Column Wash	Use flow restrictor	Flow Rate Unit ml/min 💟
	Column position By-pass	Monitor settings
Elution		Wavelengths [190 - 700] nm
Eldaon	Flow rate 1.000 ml/min [0.000 - 25.000]	UV 1 280 nm
T	Control the flow to avoid overpressure	UV 2 254 nm
Equilibration		UV 3 214 nm
	Use manually prepared buffers	Eastel and maniforms
	Inlet A A1 V Inlet B B1 V	
	O Use BufferPro (automatic buffer preparation)	Enable air sensor alarm
	Recipe Acetate 0-1M NaCl - (pH 3.8-5.4, PD)	Inlet A
	BufferPro Properties	Sample inlet
	pH 4.6 [3.8 - 5.4] (recommended)	Column Looback
	Conc 0.050 M [0.050-0.100]	Enable logging of
		Column Performance Test

### Method structure

A method always starts with the *Method Settings* phase. This phase contains general settings that affect the rest of the method (e.g., *Column type, Flow rate* and *Method Base Unit*). If changing *Column type*, UNICORN will automatically calculate correct settings for volume, flow rate, and pressure limits. Subsequent phases reflect steps included in the chromatography run.

The figure below shows a method with the different phases in the *Method Outline* in the *Method Editor*.

Method Settings
Equilibration
•
Sample Application
Column Wash
▼.
Elution
•
Equilibration

### Working with methods

It is recommended to create and edit methods using *Phase Properties*. Phases can easily be dragged-and-dropped into the *Method Outline* from the *Phase Library* and the phases are easily rearranged. Settings for each phase are set in the *Phase Properties* pane. When working like this, the text method is automatically built up in the *Text Instructions* pane and settings for blocks and instructions are updated accordingly.

The illustration below shows the phase properties settings and the text instructions for the *Method Settings* phase.

## 2 The UNICORN Method Editor

2.2 Methods in UNICORN 6.1

A CONTRACTOR OF		n (Main)			
Method Sellings		0.00 Base	CV. 0.100 (ml); (Ana)#Colu	mn	
		9 0.00 Phas	e: Method Settings		
Louin section	Presult Name & Location	0.00 B	ase: SameAsMain		
Show by lechnique Altruly	Start Protocol.	0.00 A	larm pre column pressure: Er	sabled, (20.00)#Pre column pressure	s limit (MPa), 0.00 (MPa)
Column type Any		0.00 A	larm delta column pressure: I	Enabled, (20.00)#Delta column pres	sure limit (MPa), 0.00 (MPa)
	Method Nytes	0.00 N	oise reduction UV: [0.2]#UV	averaging time (sec)	
Column volume 0.100 ml		0.00 le	jection valve: Hanual load		
Pressure limit pre-column 20.00 MPa (0.02 - 20.00)	and the second se	- 0.00 0	utlet valve: Out-Waste	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	
Press and delta column 20.00 MPa 10.07 - 20.001	Unit selection	- 0.00 C	olumn position: (By pass)#Co	slumn position, Down flow	
Contraction of the state of the	Method Base Unit CV 👻	0.00 A	arm air sensors: (Enabled)#/	his sensor alarm on inlet valve A. IE:	nabled@Air sensor alarm on inlet valve B. (Disable
C Ose flow restrictor	Fixe Rate Unit mi/min	0.00 tr	det A: (A1)Binlet A		
		- 0.00 tr	det B: (B1)#Inlet B		
Column position Bypase	Monitor settings	0.00 \$	paten flow: [1.000]#Flow rab	e (ml/min), (Pre column pressure)#P	ressure coetrol
		0.00 €	e: Emailbration		
	Wavelengths [130 - 700] Am	8 0.00 Phas	e: Sample Application		
Flow rate 1.000 m/min [0.000 - 25.000]	UV 1 280 mm	🛞 🗖 0.00 Phas	e: Column Wash		
Control the flow to avoid overpressure	TUV2 234 m	8 0.00 Phas	e: Elution		
	CINC III	2 0.00 Phas	e: Equilibration		
		C			2
O Use manually prepared buffers		Instruction Bex			*
Index A	C Enable pH monitoring	Breakpoint I	nstructions:	Presenter to Plant	
		0.00 CV	iii Other	Block	
O Use ButterPro (automatic butter preparation)	Enable at sensor alarm	Ve	Block	Var METHOD SETT	nNGS 💌
Record Acutes D1M Huft- use 3 55.4 PDI	P Inter A		Continue		
	[2] Indet B		End_Block		
Euterna Popenes	C Carrola inter		Evaluate		
pH (1) (3.8-5.4) (econworded)			Hold		
Conc. C. 0.000 M 10.050 - 0.1001	Column Logbook		EndLoop		
Landard and the second	Enable logging of		Message		
	Colore Defermance Text		new creanablen	Ma	
	C COMPACT RECEIPTION				

It is possible to use the text editor in *Text Instructions* to create a phase from scratch and to edit methods. Instructions are then created/edited one by one. This can be an option for fine-tuning or optimization of a method. If the text editor is used, *Phase Properties* will subsequently only show a list of variables for the phase, as shown in the following illustration. This can always be restored by clicking on the *Restore Phase Properties* button.

Phases that have been edited in the text editor are noted with a blue letter T as shown in the illustration below.

nase Variables         Nack       * Variable       Value       Range         LUTION       Inlet A       A1          Inlet B       B1           Flow rate (ml/min)       1.500       (0.000 - 25.000)         Pressure control       Pre column pressure          Lut frac (Elution)       Firac tube type (Elution)       96 deep well plate          Inear gradient       Gradient target (Elution) (Rit)       2.00       (0.00 - 2.20)         Last tube filled action (Elution)       Pause           inear gradient       Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       15.00       (0.00 - 100000.0)         Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       15.00       (0.00 - 100000.0)          Inear gradient       Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       15.00       (0.00 - 100000.0)         Inear gradient       Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       15.00       (0.00 - 100000.0)         Inear gradient       Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       15.00       Inear Gradient length (Elution) (CV)         Inear gradient       Inear Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       Inear Gradient length (COV)       Inear Gr	Phase Properties	Text Instructions				
hase Variables Hock Value Value Range LUTION Inlet A Inlet A Inlet B I Flow rate (ml/min) Indet B I Frace control Pre column pressure Frace volume (Elution) Gradient target (Elution) Gradient target (Elution) Gradient tength (Elution) Gradient tength (Elution) Gradient tength (Elution) Gradient tength (Elution)	ution : T nis phase has been text-	idited )				
LUTION Inlet A A1 * Inlet B B1 * Flow rate (ml/min) 1.500 [0.000 - 25.000] Pressure control Pre column pressure * Pressure control 96 deep well plate * Frac volume [Elution] 96 deep well plate * Frac volume [Elution] (ml) 2.00 [0.00 - 2.20] Last tube filled action (Elution) Pause * Incar gradient Gradient target (Elution) (28) 100.0 (0.0 - 100.0] Gradient length (Elution) (CV) 15.00 [0.00 - 100000.0] A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	<sup>a</sup> hase Variables <b>Block</b>	ttvariable		Value		Bange
Inlet B       B1         Flow rate (ml/min)       1.500         Pressure control       Pre column pressure         Pressure control       Pre column pressure         Frac tube type (Elution)       S6 deep well plate         Frac volume (Elution)       S6 deep well plate         Frac volume (Elution) (ml)       2.00         Last tube filled action (Elution)       Pause         inear gradient       Gradient target (Elution) (%B)         Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       15.00         Index I and the filled action (CV)       15.00         Index I and the filled action (CV)       15.00	ELUTION	Inlet A		A1	~	
Flow rate (ml/min}       1.500       [0.000 - 25.000]         Pressure control       Pre column pressure          Pressure control       96 deep well plate          Frac tube type (Elution)       96 deep well plate          Frac volume (Elution) (ml)       2.00       [0.00 - 2.20]         Last tube filled action (Elution)       Pause          inear gradient       Gradient target (Elution) (%B)       100.0       [0.00 - 100.0]         Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       15.00       [0.00 - 100000.0]         Image: State of the state		Inlet B		B1	~	
Pressure control       Pre column pressure         tart frac (Elution)       Frac tube type (Elution)       96 deep well plate         Frac volume (Elution) (ml)       2.00       (0.00 - 2.20)         Last tube filled action (Elution)       Pause          inear gradient       Gradient target (Elution) (%B)       100.0       (0.0 - 100.0)         Gradient length (Elution) (CV)       15.00       (0.0 - 100000.0)         Image:       Image:       Image:       Image:         Image:       Image:		Flow rate {ml	l/min}	1.500		[0.000 - 25.000]
tart frac (Elution) 96 deep well plate   Frac volume (Elution) 96 deep well plate   Frac volume (Elution) (ml) 2.00 (0.00 - 2.20) Last tube filed action (Elution) Pause   Insear gradient Gradient target (Elution) (%B) 100.0 (0.0 - 100.00) Gradient length (Elution) (CV) 15.00 (0.00 - 100000.0)		Pressure cor	ntrol	Pre column pressure	×	[0.000]
Frac volume (Elution) (ml)     2.00     (0.00 - 2.20)       Last tube filled action (Elution)     Pause        inear gradient     Gradient target (Elution) (%B)     100.0     [0.00 - 100000.0]       Gradient length (Elution) (CV)     15.00     [0.00 - 100000.0]	tart frac (Elution)	Frac tube tur	pe (Elution)	96 deep well plate	~	
Last tube filled action (Elution) Pause inear gradient Gradient target (Elution) (%B) 100.0 [0.0 · 10000.0] Gradient length (Elution) (CV) 15.00 [0.00 · 100000.0]	and the second of	Frac volume	(Elution) {ml}	2.00		10.00 - 2.201
inear gradient         Gradient target (Elution) (%B)         100.0         [0.0 - 100.0]           Gradient length (Elution) (CV)         15.00         [0.00 - 100000.0]		Last tube fille	ed action (Elution)	Pause	Y	
Gradient length (Elution) (CV) 15.00 [0.00 - 100000.0]	inear gradient	Gradient tarc	jet (Elution) {%B}	100.0		[0.0 - 100.0]
	2	Gradient leno	gth (Elution) {CV}	15.00		[0.00 - 100000.01
Show details Edit Variable	] Show details					Edit Variable

The phase *User Defined* is an empty phase designed for text editing methods. Such phases will only be displayed as a variable list in *Phase Properties*, and may be saved in the personal or global phase library for reuse in other methods.

See Chapter 9 Text edit methods, on page 286 for information about text editing methods.

**Note:** Do not mix text edited and non text edited phases unless you clearly understand the implications for the entire method of the instructions in the text edited phases.

## **Predefined and Empty methods**

In UNICORN, a number of **Predefined** methods for different separation techniques and maintenance applications (e.g., preparation and cleaning of the system and columns) are supplied. When creating new methods, it is possible to use one of the **Predefined** methods or create a user defined method starting with an **Empty method**. The phase **Method Settings** is mandatory in all methods.

See Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25 for information about how to create new methods.

Method	Description					
Predefined	ed Predefined methods include a number of relevant phases appropriate for the purification or maintenance to be performed. You may use the predefined methods as the are, or with adjusted settings as needed.					
	See Section Section 3.8 Predefined methods and phases, on page 81 for descriptions of the <b>Predefined</b> methods supplied with the software. <b>Note:</b> The <b>Predefined</b> methods are included in the instrument configuration files for each specific instrument.					
Empty	<i>Empty</i> methods include the mandatory phase <i>Method Settings</i> . Other phases are then added by the user and settings adjusted as needed.					

The table below gives a general description of *Predefined* and *Empty* methods.

## **Predefined phases**

UNICORN provides a number of *Predefined Phases* (e.g., *Equilibration*, *Column CIP* and *User Defined*) that can be used when building/editing methods in the *Method Editor*. A predefined phase contains all necessary instructions to be run (except *Method Settings* which is mandatory in all methods, and *User Defined* that are special phases).

See Section 3.8 Predefined methods and phases, on page 81 for descriptions of the predefined phases supplied with the software. See also Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25.

# 3 Create and edit methods

### About this chapter

This chapter describes how to create, edit and handle chromatography and maintenance methods in UNICORN 6.1 using the *Phase Properties* pane. It also describes overall method options, how to sign methods electronically, how to print methods, how to convert and scale methods from one ÄKTA avant system type to another, and how to import/export methods. Descriptions of the predefined methods and phases supplied with the software are also included.

**Note:** It is recommended to work with phases using the *Phase Properties* pane. This chapter does not cover how to edit methods using the *Text Instructions* pane. For information about text editing methods, see *Chapter 9 Text edit* methods, on page 286.

### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	See page
3.1 Working with methods - Overview	26
3.2 Create and open methods	30
3.3 Edit methods and phases	34
3.4 Set general method options for the method	51
3.5 Save methods and phases	63
3.6 Scale or convert methods	69
3.7 Print a method	79
3.8 Predefined methods and phases	81
3.9 Fraction collection	89
3.10 Sign methods electronically	92
3.11 Import and export methods	94

3.1 Working with methods - Overview

## 3.1 Working with methods - Overview

## Introduction

In UNICORN 6.1 methods are built up using phases, where each phase corresponds to a step in a chromatography run with a number of properties associated to that phase. By building methods in this way, methods are easily created and edited. See *Section 2.2 Methods in UNICORN 6.1, on page 20* for more information about method structure, definitions and concepts of methods in UNICORN 6.1.

There are two different ways of creating and editing methods in UNICORN 6.1:

- Creating and editing methods using phases and the phase properties in the *Phase-Properties* pane (the recommended workflow described in this chapter).
   or
- Creating methods from scratch by text editing methods, creating and editing text instructions one-by-one.

# Main steps when creating a new method

The main steps when creating a method are:

- 1 Create/open a method
  - Create a *Predefined* method (including a set of phases that may be edited) or
  - Create a new method from scratch (*Empty* method) containing only the *Method* Settings phase

or

- Open an existing method that can be edited and saved with a new name or overwritten
- 2 Build/edit the *Method Outline* and/or edit the *Phase Properties* for the appropriate phases
  - **Predefined** methods: use as they are, or edit the **Method Outline** and/or **Phase Properties**
  - *Empty* methods: add phases to the method (i.e., build the *Method Outline*) and edit *Phase Properties* for the phases as appropriate
  - Opened methods: edit the Method Outline and/or Phase Properties
- 3 Save the method

# Main steps when editing a method

The main steps when editing a method are:

- 1 Open the method to be edited
- 2 Edit the *Method Outline* and/or edit the *Phase Properties* for the appropriate phases
- 3 Save the method

3.1 Working with methods - Overview

# Illustration of workflow when creating or editing a new method

The illustration below shows the workflow in the *Method Editor* when creating or editing a method.



## **Overall method options**

In addition to creating, editing and saving the method in the *Method Editor*, a number of more general method options are available. These are settings for the method and are saved with the method.

Overall method settings can be divided into two groups. The table below shows the different groups.

Method option	Description
General method options	• setting result name and the location of the results
	setting up start protocols
	• adding/editing notes to the method
	choosing to include evaluation procedures to be per- formed after the run
	• viewing and printing an estimate of the method dura- tion time and the variables in the method
	See Section 3.4 Set general method options for the method, on page 51 for more information.
Method options intend- ed to assist the user in	• Scouting
optimizing runs in	See Chapter 4 Scouting, on page 103 for information.
UNICORN	Design Of Experiment (DoE)
	See Chapter 5 Design of Experiments, on page 116 for information.
	• BufferPro
	See Chapter 6 BufferPro, on page 203 for information.

## 3 Create and edit methods

3.2 Create and open methods

## 3.2 Create and open methods

## Create a new method

The table below describes how to create a new method:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> :
	• click the <i>Create a new method</i> icon in the <i>Toolbar</i>



or

• select File:New Method...



Result: The New Method dialog opens.



# Step Action 2 In the New Method dialog:

- select a **System** 
  - select a *Predefined Method* or select an *Empty Method* (to be created from scratch)
  - click OK

*Result*: The *Method Outline* pane shows the included phases for the chosen method and the default settings for the phase highlighted in the *Phase Properties* pane.

If an empty method was selected, only the *Method Settings* phase is shown (this phase is always included in all methods).

	Column selection							Rend	Name & Lo	cation
	Show by	technique	Anion Escha	nge		*		6	tait Pastoor	N
Equilibration	Column	boe .	Are			*		M	albord Nata	
•			-	0100	Column Property	1			endo rede	1
Sample Application	Down	YOUANO		20.00 MP	10.02.20.001					
	Pressuan	ford data	column -	20.00 MP	10.02 - 20.000		Unit selecto	n		
•		fine restrict		20.00 PH 4	to an enable		Method Base	e Unit	CV	M
Column Wash		and resources	÷.				Flow Bate U	nt	mi/min	
	Column position	Bypatt			~		Monitor settin	nai		
							Television and	. 1100	www	
Elution	Flow rate	1	million 000	10.000 - 25.0	1001		10/1	1.100.	200	
		Contra	of the flow to a	woid overpres	sure				2000 100	
		(Section)					00/2		204 70	
Column Wash							004.3		214 10	
*	Ute manually	prepared bi	flers				C Contine	di manita		
Equilibration	Inlet A	A1	M In	HB 81	*		TAL CLOBER D			
	O Use ButlerPro	(automatic	buller preparal	tion)			Enable air se	erisot eller	n	
	Recipe	AEXtin	O-TH NaCI-1	11580.9.73		19	🔄 lislet A			
		Bulletio	Properties.				🕝 Inlet D			
	pH	pH 7.4 (5.0-0.9) (recommended)					Sample inlet			
	Conc Defined by recipe for multicomponent bullers						Column Logbook			
							Enable logging of			
							Column I	Performan	ice Test	

## Open a method

The table below describes how to open an existing method in the database:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> :

• Click the Open Method Navigator icon in the Toolbar



or

• select File:Open...

File		
1	New Method	Ctrl+N
ħ.	New Method Queue	
2	Open	Ctrl+O
	Close 13	

or

2

• select View:Method Navigator

Viev	N
~	Toolbar
	Method Navigator
<b>~</b>	Gradient K
<b>~</b>	Phase Library
	Flow Scheme
	Restore to Default



Select the method to be opened in the Folder name column.

Method Navigator		Ψ×
Open 浩 🦨		»
Folder name	System	^
🖻 📒 UNICORN Database		
🖃 📄 Eric		
😑  🚞 Methods		
📄 Method1	System3	]
📄 Method2	System3	
🗉  🗎 Results		

Step	Action
3	To open the method,
	Click the <i>Open</i> button located in the toolbar of the <i>Method Navigator</i> pane
	Open
	or
	double-click the selected method
	or
	• Right-click on the method name and select <b>Open</b> from the context menu

*Result*: The method is opened and displayed in the *Method Outline* pane with included phases. You can continue to edit the phases of the method using *Phase Properties*. See *Section 3.3 Edit methods and phases, on page 34* for more information about how to edit a method.

Met	hod Settings
Ed	quilibration
Samp	le Application
	•
Co	lumn Wash
	V
	Elution
	•
Co	lumn Wash
	v
Ed	quilibration

## 3.3 Edit methods and phases

## About this section

This section describes how to edit the phase properties for a phase and how to edit the method outline of a method, that is, determine which phases that should be included in the method and determine the order of the phases in the method.

### In this section

This section contains the following sub-sections:

Section	See page
3.3.1 Edit phase properties	35
3.3.2 Edit the method outline	43

3 Create and edit methods 3.3 Edit methods and phases 3.3.1 Edit phase properties

## 3.3.1 Edit phase properties

## Introduction

When editing *Phase Properties* for a phase, the changes affect either

- the whole method, when editing the *Method Settings* phase or
- only the phase that is being edited, when editing phases other than the *Method Settings* phase

## Getting help when editing Phase Properties

The table below describes how to get help information for the properties in a phase:

Step	Action	
1	Select a phase in the me	thod to be edited, for example, <i>Equilibration</i> .
	Method Settings	
	Equilibration	
	•	
	Sample Application	
	Column Wash	
	Elution	
	Equilibration	

*Result:* The properties for the selected phase are displayed in the *Phase Properties* pane.

Phase Properties Text Instructions	T
Equilibration	
Beset UV monitor (recommended if the equili	bration occurs before the purification)
Use the same flow rate as in Method Settings	✓ Use the same inlets as in Method Settings
Elow rate 1,000 ml/min 10,000 - 25,000	
	Inlet B B1 V & B [0.00 - 100.00]
	✓ Fill the system with the selected buffer
Equilibrate until	
the total volume is         5.00 CV	
O the following condition is met	
Conductivity greater than	×
Conductivity greater than	0.00 mS/cm (0.00 - 1000.00)
Accepted pH fluctuation	0.10 [0.00 - 14.00]
Accepted UV fluctuation	0.10 mAU [0.00 - 6000.00]
Accepted conductivity fluctuation	0.10 mS/cm [0.00 - 300.00]
Signal stable for	1.00 min [0.02 - 1000.00]
Maximum equilibration volume	10.00 CV
### Step Action

3

2 Click anywhere in the **Phase Properties** area to make it the active area in the software.

• Press the **F1** keyboard key.

or

• Select Help:Contextual Help

Result: The Online help for the selected phase is displayed.



### View and edit phases using Phase Properties

The following table describes how to edit a method phase in the *Phase Properties* tab:

Step	Action
1	Make sure the <b>Phase Properties</b> tab is selected.

### 3.3 Edit methods and phases

3.3.1 Edit phase properties

Step	Action	
2	<ul> <li>Select the fecting the Base Uni</li> </ul>	e <b>Method Settings</b> phase if you want to edit basic settings af- ne whole method (e.g., <b>Column type, Flow rate</b> and <b>Method</b> <b>t</b> ). Continue with steps 3-4.
	Note:	You can also edit the <b>Result name &amp; Location</b> , the <b>Start</b> <b>Protocol</b> and <b>Method Notes</b> from the <b>Method Settings</b> phase. These are overall method options that also can be set using the corresponding <b>Toolbar</b> options and not described in this section. See Section 3.4 Set general method options for the method, on page 51 for information on how to edit these settings.
	or	

• Select any other phase to edit the properties for that specific phase. Continue with step 5.

### Step Action

3

To edit the properties for the **Method Settings** phase, click **Method Settings** in the **Method Outline**.



Result: The **Phase Properties** of the **Method Settings** phase is displayed.

ethod Setting	s	
olumn selection		Result Name & Location
Show by	v technique Anion Exchange	Start Protocol
Column	type HiLoad 16/10 Q Sepharose HP	Method Notes
Column	volume 20.106 ml Column Properties	Planed reason
Pressure	e limit pre-column 0.50 MPa (0.02 · 20.00)	- Unit selection
Pressure	e limit delta-column 0.30 MPa (0.02 · 20.00)	Method Base Unit CV V
🗹 Use	flow restrictor	Flow Rate Unit ml/min 🗸
Column position	Position 1	Monitor settings
		Wavelengths [190-700] nm
Flow rate	3.000 ml/min [0.000 - 25.000]	UV 1 280 nm
	Control the flow to avoid overpressure	DIV2 254 nm
<u></u>		
Inlet A	A1 V Inlet B B1 V	Enable pH monitoring
O Use automatic	buffer preparation (BufferPro)	Enable air sensor alarm
Recipe	Acetate 0-1M NaCI - (pH 3.8-5.4, PD)	🔽 Inlet A
	BufferPro Properties	🔽 Inlet B
pН	4.6 [3.8 - 5.4] (recommended)	Sample inlet
Conc	0.050 M [0.050 - 0.100]	Column Logbook
		Enable logging of
		Column Performance Test
		CIP

3.3 Edit methods and phases

3.3.1 Edit phase properties

Step	Action	
4	Edit the pane as calculate <b>Note:</b> <b>Note:</b>	settings for the <i>Method Settings</i> phase in the <i>Phase Properties</i> appropriate. If changing <i>Column type</i> , UNICORN will automatically e correct settings for volume, flow rate, and pressure limits. Settings in this phase will affect the whole method. Allowed parameter ranges are shown in parenthesis beside the
		text boxes.
	Result: T	he method is updated with the new settings.

UNICORN 6.1 Method Manual 28-9817-65 AB

### Step Action

5 Select a phase in the method to be edited, for example, *Equilibration*.



*Result:* The properties for the selected phase are displayed in the *Phase Properties* pane.

Phase Properties Text Instructions	T
Equilibration	
Reset UV monitor (recommended if the equili	bration occurs before the purification).
Use the same flow rate as in Method Settings	✓ Use the same inlets as in Method Settings
Flow rate 1.000 ml/min [0.000 - 25.000]	Inlet A 🛛 🖌
	Inlet B B1 🗸 0.00 % B (0.00 - 100.00)
	Fill the sustem with the selected buffer
Equilibrate until	
O the following condition is met	
Conductivity greater than	×
Conductivity greater than	0.00 mS/cm (0.00 - 1000.00)
Accepted pH fluctuation	0.10 [0.00 - 14.00]
Accepted UV fluctuation	0.10 mAU [0.00 - 6000.00]
Accepted conductivity fluctuation	0.10 mS/cm [0.00 - 300.00]
Signal stable for	1.00 min [0.02 - 1000.00]
Maximum equilibration volume	10.00 CV

3.3 Edit methods and phases

3.3.1 Edit phase properties

Step	Action
6	Edit the settings as appropriate.
	Note: If there are, for example, two predefined <i>Equilibration</i> phases in your method, changing settings in one of them will not affect the other. To be able to see that they are different, it is recommended to rename one of them. See <i>Section 3.3.2 Edit the method outline, on page 43</i> for information about how to rename a phase.
	• Repeat steps 5-6 until the appropriate phases have been edited.
	<i>Result</i> : The method is updated with the new settings. The edited settings remain in place while subsequent phases are edited. If the method is closed and not saved, the settings will revert back to the earlier values.
7	Save the method.

3 Create and edit methods 3.3 Edit methods and phases 3.3.2 Edit the method outline

### 3.3.2 Edit the method outline

### Introduction

The *Method Outline* shows the phases that are included in the method and the order of the phases in the method. Phases can be added, rearranged, renamed and deleted from the *Method Outline*.

# Add a phase to the method outline using drag-and-drop

The table below describes how to add a phase to the method outline using drag-and-drop:

Step	Action
1	Select the appropriate phase in the <i>Phase Library</i> pane and drag-and-drop the phase to the requested position in the <i>Method Outline</i> pane.
	<i>Result</i> : The phase is included in the method at the requested position. If the <b>User Defined</b> phase was added, continue with step 2.

2 When the **User Defined** phase has been added to the **Method Outline**, the phase name is enabled for editing.



Type a name for the phase and press the **Return** keyboard key.

Note: The User Defined phase is marked with the letter T, meaning that it is text edited. This phase contains only Base and End\_Block instructions, so any functional instructions must be added by hand. To include instructions for the User Defined phase, select the Text Instructions tab. The Phase Properties tab will only show the variables used in this phase. See Chapter 9 Text edit methods, on page 286 for information about how to work with instructions in the text Instructions pane.

### Add a phase to the method outline using a button or menu command

The table below describes how to add a phase to the method outline using a button or menu command:

#### Step Action

1

- Select the appropriate phase (e.g., *Equilibration*) in the *Phase Library*
- Select the appropriate phase (e.g., the *Method Settings* phase) in the *Method Outline* to determine where to place the new phase
  - **Note:** When adding a phase to the *Method Outline* using a button or menu command, the new phase is always inserted below the currently selected phase in the *Method Outline*.

*Result*: The selected phase in the *Phase Library* is indicated by a blue dotted frame and the selected phase in the *Method Outline* is highlighted in blue.

Column CIP	Method Settings
Column Performance Test	Sample Application
Column Preparation	▼
Column Wash	Column Wash
Elution	
Equilibration	Elution
Sample Application	Column Wash
System CIP	. 🔻
System Preparation	Equilibration
User Defined	
Production of Discon	
Prederined Phases	
Global Phases	
Personal Phases	

Step	Action	
2	•	Click the <b>Insert</b> button located below the <b>Phase Library</b>
		or
	•	aouble-click the selected phase

or

• select Phases:Insert Phase from Library...

Insert Phase from Library	Phases	
1	I	sert Phase from Library
Save Phase	S	we Phase

or

• right-click the phase in the *Phase Library* and select *Insert*...



*Result:* The phase is included in the method and highlighted in blue. Continue with step 3 if adding the *User Defined* phase.

ise Library - MDL, versio 4 X	
Column CIP	Method Settings
Column Performance Test	Equilibration
Column Preparation	▼
Column Wash	Sample Application
Elution	•
	Column Wash
Equilibration	•
Sample Application	Elution
System CIP	
System Preparation	Column Wash
a journe reparatery	
User Defined	Equilibration

3 Create and edit methods 3.3 Edit methods and phases

3.3.2 Edit the method outline

Step	Action	
3	When th phase no	e <b>User Defined</b> phase has been added to the <b>Method Outline</b> , the ame is enabled for editing.
	Type a n	ame for the phase and press the <b>Return</b> keyboard key.
	Note:	The <b>User Defined</b> phase is marked with the letter <b>T</b> , meaning that it is text edited. This phase contains only <b>Base</b> and <b>End_Block</b> instructions, so any functional instructions must be added by hand. To include instructions for the <b>User Defined</b> phase, select the <b>Text Instructions</b> tab. The <b>Phase Properties</b> tab will only show the variables used in this phase. See <i>Chapter 9 Text edit methods, on page 286</i> for information about how to work with instructions in the text Instructions pane.

### Rename phases

Note:	It is only possible to rename phases in the <i>Method Outline</i> pane, not in the <i>Phase Library</i> .
The table	below describes how to rename a phase in the method:
Step	Action
1	Select the phase to be renamed in the <i>Method Outline</i> pane.

Step	Action	
2	• right-click the	phase and select <b>Rename</b>
	Equilibration	Rename Delete Save Phase Move Up

Move Down Cut Copy Paste

or

• press the F2 keyboard key

or

• select Edit:Rename



*Result*: The name in the phase becomes editable.



Type an appropriate name and click **Return** keyboard key.

*Result:* The name of the phase is updated.



3

3 Create and edit methods3.3 Edit methods and phases3.3.2 Edit the method outline

# Rearrange phases within a method

2

The table below describes how to rearrange phases within a method:

Action
Action

- 1 Select the phase to be moved in the *Method Outline* pane.
  - Drag-and-drop the phase to the requested position in the *Method Outline* pane.

*Result*: The phase is moved to the requested position.

or

• Right-click the phase and select *Move up* or *Move down*.



Result: The phase is moved one step up or down in the Method Outline.

### Delete a phase from the Method Outline

The table below describes how to delete a phase from the *Method Outline*:

Step	Action
1	Select the phase to delete from the method in the <b>Method Outline</b> .

Step	Ac	tion
2	•	Click the <b>Delete</b> button below the <b>Method Outline</b> pane.
		Method Settings
		Equilibration
		<b>v</b>
		Sample Application
		▼
		Column Wash
		▼
		Elution
		<b>v</b>
		Equilibration - 8CV
		Delete Save Phase Duration & Variables
		or
	•	Press the <b>Delete</b> key on the keyboard.
		or
	•	select <b>Edit:Delete</b>



or

• Right-click on the phase and select *Delete* from the context menu.

*Result*: The phase is removed from the method.

# Copy, cut and paste phases in a method

**Note:** It is only possible to copy, cut and paste phases in the *Method Outline* pane, not in the *Phase Library*.

The features copy, cut and paste phases can be used to add/delete and rearrange phases in the *Method Outline*. The table below describes the copy, cut and paste a phase features.

То	then
copy a phase	<ul> <li>select the phase and:</li> <li>right-click the phase and select <i>Copy</i> or</li> <li>use the shortcut Ctrl +C or</li> <li>select <i>Edit:Copy</i></li> </ul>
cut a phase	<ul> <li>select the phase and:</li> <li>right-click the phase and select <i>Cut</i> or</li> <li>use the shortcut Ctrl +X or</li> <li>select <i>Edit:Cut</i></li> </ul>
paste a phase	<ul> <li>Note: The phase to be pasted will be pasted below the phase highlighted in the <i>Method Outline</i>.</li> <li>Select the appropriate phase in the <i>Method Outline</i>. Then:</li> <li>right-click the highlighted phase in the <i>Method Outline</i> and select <i>Paste</i> or</li> <li>use the shortcut Ctrl +V or</li> <li>select <i>Edit:Paste</i></li> </ul>

# 3.4 Set general method options for the method

### Introduction

This section describes how to set and view options for an entire method. The following are covered in this section:

- Defining the name and location for the results.
- How to set up a *Start Protocol* that will be displayed before each method run.
- Adding or changing method notes.
- How to include evaulation procedures which can be executed during the run.
- Viewing the method duration time and volume.
- Viewing the variables used in the method.

### **Define Result Name & Location**

The table below describes how to define the name of the result file created after the run and how to specify the folder in which to save the result file.

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> :

• click the **Result Name & Location** icon



or

• select Edit:Result Name & Location...

Edit	:	
5	Undo	Ctrl+Z
	Redo	Ctrl+Y
뎒	Result Name & Location	
-	Method Note	s h

or

• click the *Method Settings* phase and click the *Result Name & Location...* button in the *Phase Properties* tab

Result Name & Location...

Result: The Result Name & Location dialog opens.

2	Result Name & Location	n 🛛	
	No Result		
	Result location:	/DefaultHome Browse	
		Folder name for Design of Experiments or Scouting:	
	Result name:		
	Result name: O Name		
	Result name: Name Variable		
	Result name: Name Variable Method name	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	Result name: Name Variable Method name		
	Result name: Name Variable Method name Date	Add unique identifier	

In the Result Name & Location dialog:

- Set *Result location* by clicking the *Browse* button and select a folder in which to save the results. By default, the results will be saved in your home folder.
- Select Result name.
  - Name: The result name can be typed in manually
  - **Variable**: The result name will be generated from the chosen variable (see Section 9.2.4 Method variables, on page 315)
  - *Method name* (default): The result name will be generated from the name of the method
  - Date: The result name will be generated from the date of the run
- Check the Add unique identifier box if you want to include a unique identifier number to the file name. The number will be generated by UNICORN based on the run time of the method.
- Click **OK** to confirm and close the dialog.

### Set up a Start Protocol

The table below describes how to set up a *Start Protocol* to be displayed before the run starts.

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> :

• click the Start Protocol icon



or

• select Tools:Start Protocol...

Ê,	Start Protocol
	Evaluation Procedures
	Scouting
廊	Design of Experiments

or

• click the *Method Settings* phase and click the *Start Protocol...* button in the *Phase Properties* tab

Start Protocol...



2		
-		

	_	_	
	_	_	
	_	_	
L		7	<u>.</u>
-			

In the Start Protocol dialog:

- Select items to display at method start. When selecting a method item, a description is shown to the right. *Result Name and Location* is selected by default.
- Click **OK** to confirm and close the dialog.

### Add/edit Method Notes

The table below describes how to add/edit notes to a method.

Step	Action					
1	In the <i>Method Editor</i> :					
	• click the <i>Method Notes</i> icon					
	or					
	select <i>Edit:Method Notes</i>					
	Edit					
	Undo Ctrl+Z					
	Redo Ctrl+Y					
	Image: Image and the second					
	B Method Notes					
	or					
	• click the <i>Method Settings</i> phase and click the <i>Method Notes…</i> button in the <i>Phase Properties</i> tab					
	Method Notes					

Result: The Method Notes dialog opens.

3.4 Set general method options for the method

Step	Action
2	Method Notes
	Find         OK         Cancel

In the Method Notes dialog:

- Enter/edit notes about the method. If notes already have been entered, • it is possible to search for specific words using the *Find...* button.
- Click **OK** to confirm and close the dialog.
- Information will automatically be added to the Method Notes if Note: the method has been converted for use with another ÄKTA avant system type than what it was originally created for, or scaled for another column type than what was originally selected.

# Include Evaluation Procedures after the run

The table below describes how to include an evaluation procedure in the method. The evaluation procedure will be performed automatically after the run has finished. The evaluation procedures must have been defined in the *Evaluation* module, see the UNI-CORN 6.1 Evaluation Manual.

Step	Action					
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> :					
	click the <i>Evaluation Procedures</i> icon					
	or					
	select Tools:Evaluation Procedures					
	Tools       Start Protocol       Evaluation Procedures       Scouting					

Result: The Evaluation Procedures dialog opens.

Design of Experiments...



- If there are no evaluation procedures listed in the *Evaluation Procedures* dialog, click the *Import...* button to import an evaluation procedure.
   *Result*: The *Import Evaluation Procedure* dialog opens. Continue with step 3.
- If an evaluation procedure that should be used in the run has been saved in the method earlier, it is shown in the *Evaluation Procedures* dialog. Continue with step 4.

2

3.4 Set general method options for the method



In the Import Evaluation Procedures dialog:

- Select the appropriate procedure to import in the Select procedure to import field.
- It is possible to change the name of the procedure to be displayed in your method by changing the name in the *Import as* field.
- Click Import to import the procedure
- **Note:** Only *Global* procedures and your own *Personal* procedures are shown in the list.
- **Note:** It is also possible to import a procedure saved in another method by browsing to the appropriate folder and selecting the method containing the procedure. The procedure will be listed in the *Select procedure to import* field and can be imported as described above.

Result: The evaluation procedure is listed in the Evaluation Procedures dialog.

4	Evaluation Procedures
	Selected evaluation procedures will run at the end of the method:
	Evaluation Procedure 1

Make sure the box in front of the evaluation procedure is checked to include it in the method.

Click Close.

*Result:* The evaluation procedure is included in the method.

**Note:** It is possible to edit an existing evaluation procedure by selecting it and clicking *Edit...*. The edits will only change the procedure that is included in the method. See the UNICORN 6.1 Evaluation Manual for information about how to edit an evaluation procedure.

# View and print the method duration time and variables

1

The table below describes how to view and print an estimation of the method duration time and the variables in the method:

|--|

- In the **Method Editor**:
  - click the Duration & Variables button below the Method Outline pane

Duration & Variables

or

• select View:Duration & Variables



*Result*: The *Method Duration & Variables* dialog opens displaying the *Method Duration* tab.



The **Method Duration** tab shows an estimation of the accumulated method time and volume for the current method below the text method.

If the method includes a Scouting series, an estimation of the accumulated method time and volume for the total series of runs is displayed below the text method.

Note: Click the arrow buttons to display the different scouting runs.

> The accumulated time/volume is an approximation and does not take into account time or volume for Watch blocks, Wash commands or programmed Hold.

- Select *Time* as *Base* to show the time in minutes in the text method.
  - Select **Volume** as **Base** to show the volume in the text method.
- To view the variables in the method, click the Variable List tab. Result: The Variable List is displayed.

3

2

3.4 Set general method options for the method

Step

Action

Phase	Block		Variable	Value		Ra
Method Settings,	METHOD SETTINGS,		Inlet A	A1	~	
			Inlet B	B1	~	
			Flow rate (ml/min)	10.000		[0.0
			Pressure control	Pre column pressure	*	
Rubisco Elution	ELUTION_1	D	Percent B (Elution)_1 {%B}	0.0		[0.0
Rubisco Elution	Start frac (Elution)_1		Frac tube type (Elution)_1	96 deep well plate	~	
			Frac volume (Elution)_1 {ml}	2.00		[0.1
		D	Frac start position (Elution)_1	Next tube	~	
			Last tube filled action (Elution)_1	Pause	~	
Rubisco Elution	Linear gradient_1		Gradient target (Elution)_1 {%B}	100.0		[0.0
			Gradient length (Elution)_1 (CV)	20.00		[0.0
Rubisco Elution	Gradient delay_1	D	Gradient delay volume_1 {ml}	3.00		[0.1
Equilibration	EQUILIBRATION		Percent B (Equilibration) {%B}	0.0		[0.0
			Fill system (Equilibration) {ml}	15		[10
Equilibration	Equilibrate		Equilibration volume (CV)	5.00		[0.0
<				1		
Show details	riables					

The *Variable List* shows the variables in the method. It is also possible to see in which phases the variables are included and the different values. Variables with an ellipsis (...) after their name are used in multiple phases or blocks. It is not possible to change any values in this dialog.

- Check the **Show details** box to view variables classified as detailed. The letter **D** will be shown to the left of the detailed variables.
- Check the **Show unused variables** box to view unused variables in the method. The letter **U** will be shown to the left of unused variables.
- 6 To print the information in the *Method Duration & Variables* dialog, click the *Print...* button.

Result: The Print dialog opens.

7 Select a *Printer* from the drop-down list and click *OK*. *Result:* The information is printed.

# 3.5 Save methods and phases

### Introduction

Methods and phases are saved in the UNICORN database.

Individual, edited phases may be saved to the *Phase Library* for later use in other methods on systems having the same instrument configuration and component configuration.

**Note:** You cannot save an edited method/phase to replace a predefined method or phase. If you want to save an edited variant of a predefined method or phase with specific settings, you must save it under another name. A predefined method or phase can not be overwritten.

### Save a method

The table below describes how to save a method in UNICORN.

Step	Action	
1	Click the <i>Save the Method</i> icon	

or

• select File:Save or File:Save As.

Result:

• If the method has been named and saved previously, the changes are saved immediately.

If not

• The Save As dialog opens. Proceed with steps 2-4 below.

3.5 Save methods and phases

Step Actio	n
------------	---

2

Browse for an appropriate folder, or create a new one.

🛅 🦪 Methods	• 🗐 •			
Folder name	System	Last modified	Created by	
📧 🚞 Bridget		5/18/2009 1:22:5	Default	
📧 🚞 Charlie		5/18/2009 1:23:1	Default	
😑 📄 Christine		5/18/2009 1:23:0	Default	
😑 📴 RuBisCo		5/18/2009 1:24:5	Default	0
🗉 🛅 David E		5/18/2009 1:23:3	Default	
📧 📋 David T		5/18/2009 1:23:2	Default	
😑   🛅 DefaultHome		9/25/2008 1:07:1	System	
😐 🚞 Francine		5/18/2009 1:24:1	Default	
📧 🔚 Gerald		5/18/2009 1:23:5	Default	
📧 🛅 Greta		5/18/2009 1:23:5	Default	
🗉 🚞 Helen		5/18/2009 1:24:2	Default	
			>	
Name: Rubisco-MonoQ-Tris7	7.1			
System: SystemC				

3

- Select the folder in which to save the results.
- Enter a method *Name*.
- Select for which *System* to save the method

Step	Action	
4	Click <b>Save</b>	е.
	Result: Th	e method is saved in the database.
	Note:	An error message will appear if you are trying to save the method for:
		<ul> <li>a system using another instrument configuration and/or another component configuration than the method originally was created for and</li> </ul>
		• the settings in the method depends on the component con- figuration (e.g., if an extra inlet A valve is used in the method, this setting cannot be used in a system lacking the extra inlet A valve.)
		It will still be possible to save the method but the phases in the method will be marked with an error symbol. In order to be able to subsequently run the method, either the method must be text- edited or the component configuration of the system changed in the <i>Administration</i> module.

### Save a phase

The table below describes how to save a phase to the *Phase Library*:

Step	Action	
1	Select the Note:	phase to be saved in the method outline. A <i>Method Settings</i> phase can not be saved as a separate phase with a new name. If editing properties for the <i>Method Settings</i> phase, the changes will be saved with the method.

#### 3.5 Save methods and phases

Step	Action
2	click the Save Phase button below the Method Outline pane

<u>S</u>ave Phase...

or

• select Phases:Save Phase...

Pha	ises	
	Inse	ert Phase from Library
	Sav	re Phase

or

• right-click the phase and select **Save Phase...** 



Result: The Save Phase to Phase Library dialog opens.

Save Phase 1	o Phase Library	X
Phase name:	Sample Application Superloop 50	~
For system:	System3	~
	O Global 💿 Personal	i.
0	ОК	Cancel

• Type a Phase name

or

3

• Choose a phase from the *Phase name* drop-down list. This phase will be replaced by the phase with the new settings.

Step	Action		
4	In the <b>Fo</b> method v system, o list.	<b>r system</b> field, the system that was selected when the current was set up will be displayed by default. To save the phase for another choose the appropriate system from the <b>For system</b> drop-down	
	Note:	Only systems using the same instrument configuration and component configuration as the system that was selected when the current method was set up will be displayed in the <i>For system</i> field.	
5	• Selec (for y	ct if the phase shall be <b>Global</b> (available for all users) or <b>Personal</b> our own use only).	
	Click	ОК.	
	Note:	It is not possible to replace a predefined phase by saving an ex- isting phase.	
	<i>Result</i> : The phase is saved and is available in the <i>Global Phases</i> or <i>Personal Phases</i> panel of the <i>Phase Library</i> .		
	Phase Library Sample A Supertoop	y - MDL, versio pplication 50	

Predefined Phases Global Phases Personal Phases

### Delete a phase from the Phase Library

It is possible to delete personal and global phases from the *Phase Library*. Predefined phases cannot be deleted.

The table below describes how to delete a personal or global phase from the phase library:

3.5 Save methods and phases

1

3

### Step Action

Select the appropriate phase library: **Personal Phases** or **Global Phases** at the bottom of the **Phase Library** pane.



Result: The phases in that phase library are displayed.

Sample Application Superloop 50	
Predefined Phases	
Predefined Phases Global Phases	

2 Select the phase to delete from the library.

• Click the *Delete* button at the bottom of the *Phase Library* pane.

Delete

or

• Right-click the phase and select Delete.

Sample Application	
Superloop 50	Insert
	Delete
	Export

Result: The phase is removed from the Phase Library.

# 3.6 Scale or convert methods

### Introduction

UNICORN methods are always created specifically for a designated system and thus also for a specific system type (e.g. ÄKTA avant 25). However, it is often useful to convert a method that was originally created for a system of one type , for use with another a system of another type (e.g. ÄKTA avant 150). The converted method is created as a copy of the original method. The original method remains saved.

When a method is converted, it can also be scaled for use with a different column type than what it was originally created for. Both processes are described in this section.

Tip:If you wish to use a method for another system of the same ÄKTA avant<br/>system type that it was originally created for, you only need to choose<br/>*File:Save As*, select the new system and save the method with another name.<br/>To only change the selected column type, you should edit the method, change<br/>the column selection and save the edited method.

### **Prerequisites**

The following items should be considered to ensure that the method conversion and scaling is successful:

- The original method should use column volume (CV) as base
- All parameters that will require scaling should be defined as variables
- If linear flow is to be maintained in the scaled method, it must have been applied in the original method as well
- Scaling of the column type is not possible if the **Any** column type was selected in the original method
- Text edited phases will not be automatically updated during the conversion

# Convert a method to another system type

The table below describes how to convert a method to be used with another system type.

Step	Action
1	Open the method you want to convert in the <i>Method Editor</i> .

3.6 Scale or convert methods

### Step Action

2

### Choose the menu command *File:Scale or Convert Method Result*: The *Scale or Convert Method* dialog opens.

Method: AIEX_A	AKTA avant 25	
Convert and S	Scale up/down method	
Target <u>S</u> ystem:	AKTA avant 150	
Column Type:	HiTrap Capto DEAE, 1 ml	Select <u>C</u> olumn

3 Select the option *Convert method to system*.

4 Choose the system to which the method should be converted in the **Target System** list.

The list will show all available, active systems. Deactivated systems are not shown.

**Tip:** You can convert methods that originally were created for systems that now are deactivated.

#### Step Action

5 Click the **OK** button.

*Result:* The method is converted as an untitled copy (*UNTITLED converted\**). The *Method Notes* dialog opens, showing basic information about the conversion.

1	Method Notes	×
1	Method '/DefaultHome/AIEX_AKTA avant 25' was sucessfully converted from 'AKTA avant 25 (MDL461 (6.1.0.0))' to 'AKTA avant 150 (MDH064 (6.1.0.0))'. Date of conversion/scaling. 6/16/2010.	2
	In non text edited phases, system related parameters such as wash and delay volumes are automatically adjusted for the new system type. Note! This information was valid at the time of scaling/converting the method.	
	Modifications made afterwards are not logged here.	
	For more details, see user documentation.	
		X
No.	Eind OK Cancel	

- **Note:** The information shown in the *Method Notes* will not include details about scaled system related parameters (e.g. wash or delay volumes) or notes concerning method instructions that may have become invalid as a result of conversion between systems with different components and instrument configurations. You must verify that there are no phases with invalid instructions (i.e. phases marked with a red cross) in the new method before it can be used. See note below this instruction.
- 6
- Type any additional notes you wish to add in the text field and
- click the **OK** button to close the **Method Notes** dialog.

8

Step	Action
7	<ul> <li>Choose the <i>File:Save As</i> menu command to save the converted method or</li> <li>click the <i>Save</i> icon</li> </ul>

*Result:* The *Save As* dialog opens, with the folder where the original method is saved open by default.

- Select the desired target folder,
  - type a new method name in the *Name* field and
  - click the *Save* button.

Note:	The original method remains after the converted method is saved. However, the converted method will replace the original if you choose to save the converted method with the same name in the same folder as the original.
Note:	The flow rate and/or pressure settings in the method will automatically be adjusted if the maximum flow rate and/or pressure values for the target system is exceeded after the conversion. The maximum settings for the target system will be used by default.
Note:	In case the original method contains instructions that are not supported by the new system, this will be indicated in the method outline of the converted method as a red cross on the phase containing these instructions.
	To be able to run the method on the new system you need to replace or re- move the invalid instructions in the <i>Text Instructions</i> pane. Invalid instructions are indicated with red square symbols in the text instructions.
	You can also replace the phase with a predefined phase from the phase library.
# Convert and scale a method up or down

The table below describes how to convert a method to be used with another system type, and at the same time scale the method to be used with another column size.

Step	Action	
1	Open the method you want to convert and scale in the <i>Method Editor</i> .	
2	Choose the menu command <i>File:Scale or Convert Method</i> <i>Result:</i> The <i>Scale or Convert Method</i> dialog opens.	
3	Select the option Convert and Scale up/down method.	
4	Choose the system to which the method should be converted in the <b>Target System</b> list.	

Step	Action
5	By default, the same column type that was selected in the original method
	is shown in the <b>Column Type</b> field.

• Click the **Select Column...** button to select a new column type.

Result: The Select Column Type dialog opens.

Select Column Type	×
Show by technique:	
Anion Exchange 🛛 👻	
Show by access label:	
Predefined types	
🔽 Global types, user created	
Personal types, user created	
AxiChrom 50/300 20um SS Capto Q 20 cm HiLoad 16/10 Q Sepharose HP HiLoad 26/10 Q Sepharose HP HiPrep 16/10 ANX FF (high sub) HiPrep DEAE FF 16/10 HiPrep Q XL 16/10	^
HiScale 16/20 Capto_DEAE	
HiScreen Capto adhere HiScreen Capto DEAE HiScreen Capto Q HiScreen Q FF	
HiTrap ANX FF (high sub), 1 ml HiTrap ANX FF (high sub), 5 ml HiTrap Capto adhere, 1 ml HiTrap Capto DEAE, 5 ml HiTrap Capto DEAE, 5 ml HiTrap Capto Q, 1 ml HiTrap Capto Q, 5 ml HiTrap Capto Q, 5 ml HiTrap DEAE FF, 1 ml	
HiTrap DEAE FF, 5 ml HiTrap Q FF, 1 ml HiTrap Q FF, 5 ml	~
OK Cancel	

Step	Action
6	• Select the column type from the list of available column types
	and

• click the **OK** button.

*Result:* The *Select Column Type* dialog closes and the selected column is shown in the *Column Type* field of the *Scale or Convert Method* dialog.

Scale or Conve	rt Method	
Method: AIEX_A Convert methol Convert and S	ιKTA avant 25 od to system βcale up/down method	
Target <u>S</u> ystem:	AKTA avant 150	~
Column Type:	HiScale 16/20 Capto_DEAE	Select <u>C</u> olumn.
۷	✓ Keep linear flow on new column	OK Cancel

7

- If desired, select the Keep linear flow on new column option.
- **Note:** This option is applicable only if linear flow was selected in the original method. If linear flow is not selected, the default flow settings for the selected column type will be used.

8

9

#### Step Action

#### Click the **OK** button.

*Result:* The method is scaled as an untitled copy (*UNTITLED converted\**). The *Method Notes* dialog opens, showing basic information about the conversion.

٨	Aethod Notes	×
	Method '/DefaultHome/AIEX_AKTA avant 25' was sucessfully converted from 'AKTA avant 25 (MDL461 (6.1.0.0))' to 'AKTA avant 150 (MDH064 (6.1.0.0))'. Date of conversion/scaling: 6/16/2010.	>
	Method Settings Column volume changed from 0.962 ml to 41.419 ml Pressure limit pre-column changed from 0.5 MPa to 2 MPa Pressure limit delta-column changed from 0.3 MPa to 2 MPa	
	In non text edited phases, system related parameters such as wash and delay volumes are automatically adjusted for the new system type.	
	Notel This information was valid at the time of scaling/converting the method. Modifications made afterwards are not logged here.	
	For more details, see user documentation.	
	Eind OK Cancel	

- Note: The information shown in the *Method Notes* will not include details about scaled system related parameters (e.g. wash or delay volumes) or notes concerning method instructions that may have become invalid as a result of conversion between systems with different components and instrument configurations. You must verify that there are no phases with invalid instructions (i.e. phases marked with a red cross) in the new method before it can be used. See note below this instruction.
- Type any additional notes you wish to add in the text field
   and
  - click the **OK** button to close the **Method Notes** dialog.

Step	Action		
10	Choose the <i>File:Save As</i> menu command		
	or		
	• click the <i>Save</i> icon		

*Result:* The *Save As* dialog opens, with the folder where the original method is saved open by default.

• Select the desired target folder,

- type a new method name in the *Name* field and
- click the *Save* button.
- Note: The original method remains after the converted method is saved. However, the converted method will replace the original if you choose to save the converted method with the same name in the same folder as the original. Note: The flow rate and/or pressure settings in the method will automatically be adjusted if the maximum flow rate and/or pressure values for the target system is exceeded after the conversion. The maximum settings for the target system will be used by default. Note: In case the original method contains instructions that are not supported by the new system, this will be indicated in the method outline of the converted method as a red cross on the phase containing these instructions. To be able to run the method on the new system you need to replace or remove the invalid instructions in the Text Instructions pane. Invalid instructions are indicated with red square symbols in the text instructions. You can also replace the phase with a predefined phase from the phase library.

### The method after conversion

The conversion will adjust the following settings to the appropriate values for the selected new system:

- Gradient delay
- System wash volume (i.e. Fill system value)

#### 3 Create and edit methods 3.6 Scale or convert methods

• Volume for finalization of sample application (only applicable when *Inject sample directly onto column* and then *Inject all sample using air sensor* is selected)

The following settings may remain to be adjusted manually after the conversion:

- Sample volume
- Fractionation volumes
- User defined volumes in System CIP and System preparation
- System related settings in text edited phases

(However, column related settings will be scaled also in text edited phases, provided they have been defined as variables)

# Converting a method for use in a different database

The table below describes the necessary steps to be performed if you wish to convert a method for use with another ÄKTA avant system type, in another database than where the original method was created.

**Tip:** This procedure must be followed in order to convert methods from one standalone system to another stand-alone system.

Step	Action	
1	Set up a figuratic <b>Tip:</b>	new system in the target database. Use the same instrument con- on as the system for which the method was originally created. This system is created for the conversion only and can be set up inactivated.
2	Export t	he method from the original database.
3	Import ti system.	ne method into the target database, for use with the new, inactivated
4	Convert system, scalina (	the method from the inactivated system to be used with the target as described in the applicable instruction above (i.e. with or without of the column size).

## 3.7 Print a method

## Introduction

This section describes how to print a method's text instructions and variables. UNICORN uses the printers and printer settings that are installed on your computer.

## Print a method

The table below describes how to print an opened method:

Step	Action			
1	<ul> <li>Click t</li> <li>Image: Click t</li> <li>Image: Click t</li> <li>Or</li> <li>select</li> </ul>	the <b>Print</b> icon in the <b>P</b>	Toolbar	
	File			
	11 11	New Method New Method Queue	Ctrl+N	
		Open Close New Folder	Ctrl+0	
		Save Save As Scale or Convert M Sign Method	Ctrl+S ethod	
	-	Print	Ctrl+P	
		Export	5	•
		Import		•

*Result*: The *Print* dialog opens.

## 3 Create and edit methods 3.7 Print a method

3

Step	Action
2	In the <b>Print</b> dialog:
	Print - REX HiTrap Chelating
	Printer: Printer outside office Properties
	Print items:     Phase range:       Text instructions     Image: All phases       Variable list     Phase: Method Settings
	OK Cancel Options >>

- select Printer
- select which Print items to be printed
- select to print all phases in the method or a specific phase in the *Phase* range field
- By default, information about the overall method settings as well as any signatures and specific columns used in the method are printed. To exclude or add information, click **Options>>** and check/uncheck the appropriate boxes.

Print - REX HiTrap Chelating				
Printer: Printer outside office		Properties		
Print items: Text instructions Variable list	Phase range:	gs 💌		
	ОК	Cancel Options <<		
Include		7		
Properties	Design of Experiments	🗹 Start protocol		
Signatures	Scouting	Questions		
Method duration	BufferPro recipes	Result name and location		
Columns	Method notes	Evaluation procedures		

Note:

Only options that are used in a method can be printed. Options that are not used are greyed out in the **Print** dialog.

4 Click **OK**.

*Result*: The method is printed.

## 3.8 Predefined methods and phases

## Introduction

A predefined method contains a set of phases, each phase reflecting a specific stage of a chromatography or maintenance run. You can select additional phases from the phase libraries and add these to an existing method, or remove an undesired phase.

The predefined purification methods have default values with suitable running conditions for the chosen column type such as flow and pressure limits. Other settings (e.g., sample application technique, sample volume, elution profile and fractionation) are set on the *Phase Properties* pane in the appropriate phases.

This section describes the predefined methods and phases.

## **Predefined purification methods**

The *Method Editor* has predefined methods for different separation techniques. The methods include a number of relevant phases.

The table below describes the available predefined purification methods and which phases that are included.

Predefined purification method	Principle	Included phases
Affinity Chromatog- raphy (AC)	After equilibration and sample applica- tion, the protein of interest is adsorbed to the column ligand. After a wash to remove unbound sample, elution is performed either by using a buffer containing a competitor to displace the protein of interest, or by changing the pH or ionic strength. Finally, the column is re-equilibrated with start buffer.	Equilibration         Image: Column Wash         Image:

3.8 Predefined methods and phases

Predefined purification method	Principle	Included phases
Anion Ex- change Chromatog- raphy (AIEX)	After equilibration and sample applica- tion, negatively charged proteins are adsorbed to the column ligand. After a wash, to remove unbound sample, elution is performed using a gradient of increasing salt concentration (of e.g. NaCl). Finally, the column is washed and re-equilibrated with start buffer.	Method Settings Equilibration  Sample Application  Column Wash  Elution  Column Wash  Elution  Elution  Elution  Equilibration
Cation Ex- change Chromatog- raphy (CIEX)	After equilibration and sample applica- tion, positively charged proteins are adsorbed to the column ligand. After a wash, to remove unbound sample, elution is performed using a gradient of increasing salt concentration (of e.g. NaCl). Finally, the column is washed and re-equilibrated with start buffer.	Method Settings         Equilibration         Sample Application         V         Column Wash         V         Elution         V         Column Wash         V         Elution         V         Elution         V         Elution         V         Elution

Predefined purification method	Principle	Included phases
Chromatofo- cusing (CF)	After equilibration and sample applica- tion, elution is performed using a pH gradient. The proteins separate and elute according to their isoelectric points. Finally, the column is re-equili- brated.	Method Settings Equilibration Sample Application Elution Equilibration
Desalting	After equilibration and sample applica- tion, the proteins are eluted isocratical- ly. This technique is commonly used for buffer exchange.	Method Settings Equilibration Sample Application Elution
Gel filtra- tion (GF)	After equilibration and sample applica- tion, proteins separate and elute ac- cording to their size (largest first).	Method Settings Equilibration Sample Application Elution

3.8 Predefined methods and phases

Predefined purification method	Principle	Included phases
Hydropho- bic Interac- tion Chro- matogra- phy (HIC)	After equilibration and sample applica- tion (use a buffer containing a high salt concentration, for example 2 M Ammo- nium Sulphate) hydrophobic proteins are adsobed to the column ligand. After a wash to remove unbound sample, elution is performed using a gradient of decreasing salt concentration. Final- ly, the column is washed and re-equili- brated with start buffer.	Method Settings Equilibration  Equilibration  Sample Application  Column Wash  Elution  Column Wash  Elution  Equilibration
Reversed Phase Chro- matogra- phy (RPC)	After equilibration and sample applica- tion, hydrophobic proteins adsorb to the column ligand. After a wash to re- move unbound sample, elution is per- formed by generating a gradient of a non-polar, organic solvent such as Acetonitrile. Finally, the column is washed and re-equilibrated.	Method Settings



### WARNING

**Fraction collector**. Do *not* fractionate flammable liquids. When running RPC methods, or other procedures using organic solvents, collect fractions through the Outlet valve.

# Predefined maintenance methods

A number of predefined methods for preparation and cleaning are available. These maintenance methods are used to prepare the system, clean the system, and to fill the system with storage solution.

The table below describes the available predefined maintenance methods.

Prede- fined mainte- nance method	Principle	Included phases
Column CIP	The column is filled with a cleaning solution. Select inlet positions. Enter the solution identity, volume, flow rate and incubation time. By adding steps, several cleaning so- lutions can be used. Suggestions for clean- ing steps are available for a number of col- umn types.	Method Settings Column CIP
Column Perfor- mance Test	After equilibration of the column, sample is injected via a capillary loop and eluted iso- cratically. A non-adsorbing sample like acetone or salt should be used. After the run, calculate column performance in the <b>Evaluation</b> module. The efficiency of the column is determined in terms of height equivalent to a theoretical plate (HETP), and the peak asymmetry factor (A <sub>s</sub> ). The result is logged in the column logbook.	Method Settings Equilibration V Column Performance Test
Column Prepara- tion	The column is filled with buffer solution. Select inlet positions. Enter the solution identity, volume, flow rate and incubation time. By adding steps, several preparation solutions can be used.	Method Settings Column Preparation

3.8 Predefined methods and phases

Prede- fined mainte- nance method	Principle	Included phases
Intelli- gent Packing	Packs AxiChrom columns, with a predeter- mined column type, by a flow of hydraulic liquid that pushes the adaptor down. The user initiates the start of compression at the exact point when the adapter reaches the consolidated bed surface. The adapter compresses the bed according to the packing factor or target bed height as se- lected. Two Column Performance Test (up- flow/downflow) phases are automatically performed after the AxiChrom column has been packed. Only available for ÄKTA avant 150.	Method Settings Intelligent Packing Column Performance Test Column Performance Test
System CIP	The system is filled with cleaning solution. Select for example inlets, outlets and col- umn positions to be cleaned. Three <b>System</b> <b>CIP</b> phases are included in the method to facilitate the use of three different cleaning solution. Additional <b>System CIP</b> phases can be added from the <b>Phase Library</b> if desired.	Method Settings System CIP System CIP System CIP
System Prepara- tion	The system is filled with preparation solu- tion. Select for example inlets, outlets and column positions to be prepared. Two <b>Sys-</b> <i>tem Preparation</i> phases are included in the method. Additional <b>System Preparation</b> phases can be added from the <b>Phase Li-</b> <i>brary</i> if desired.	Method Settings System Preparation System Preparation

## **Predefined phases**

Phase Name	Description
Method Settings	The first, and mandatory, phase in any method. Defines common parameters used in the subsequent phases. The <i>Method Settings</i> phase defines:
	Column type
	Pressure limits
	Flow rate
	Option to control the flow to avoid overpressure
	<b>Note:</b> Default values for pressure limits and flow rate are given for the selected column type
	Column position
	Flow restrictor use
	Buffer preparation:
	- Manual, or
	- BufferPro (automatic buffer preparation)
	Unit selection for Method base and Flow rate
	Monitor settings:
	- UV monitor
	- pH monitor
	- Air sensor alarm settings
	Settings for Column Logbook
	Start Protocol
	Result name and location
	<b>Note:</b> Some of these options may not be required by certain methods.
Equilibration	Equilibrates the column before purification, or re-equilibrates the column after purification.
Sample Applica- tion	Applies sample to the column. Defines the sample application technique, the sample volume, and the handling of flowthrough.

The table below describes the predefined phases.

3.8 Predefined methods and phases

Phase Name	Description
Column Wash	Washes out unbound sample after sample application or removes strongly bound proteins after elution.
Elution	Elutes the sample from the column. Defines parameters for the elution and fractionation settings.
Column Prepara- tion	Prepares the column before use by removing the storage solution and equilibrating the column. By adding steps, several prepara- tion solutions can be used sequentially.
Column CIP	Cleans the column after purification runs by rinsing the column with a cleaning solution to remove unspecifically bound proteins. By adding steps, several cleaning solutions can be used sequen- tially.
System Prepara- tion	Prepares the system before a run by removing storage solution and filling the system and inlets with buffer solution. One prepa- ration solution is used per phase.
System CIP	Cleans the system after purification runs by rinsing the system with a cleaning solution. One cleaning solution is used per phase.
Column perfor- mance test	Tests the efficiency of a packed column in terms of height equivalent to a theoretical plate (HETP), and the peak asymmetry factor (A <sub>s</sub> ).
Intelligent Pack- ing	A flow of hydraulic liquid pushes the adapter down. The user ini- tiates the start of compression at the exact point when the adapter reaches the consolidated bed surface. The adapter compresses the bed according to the packing factor or target bed height as selected. Only available for ÄKTA avant 150.

## 3.9 Fraction collection

## Introduction

For many purification schemes it is convenient to collect fractions of the eluent. Several of the predefined phases and methods include options for fraction collection in the **Phase Properties** pane.

This section describes briefly the various options available for fractionation in predefined methods and phases, and how to set up fraction collection when editing a method. More detailed information for individual settings can be found using the online help for the phase, see *Getting help when editing Phase Properties*, on page 36.

## **Fractionation overview**

Fractionation is available in the *Phase Properties* pane in the predefined phases *Sample Application*, *Column Wash* and *Elution*. These three phases are included in many of the predefined methods in UNICORN. This option will also be available in personal or global phases derived from these. See *Section 3.3.1 Edit phase properties, on page 35* for details on how to edit methods and phases.

For each phase, fractions can either be collected using the outlet valve or the fraction collector. If there is no risk of sample loss, the eluate may be sent to the waste and not collected. When fractionating to the outlet valve, a specific outlet valve position is selected. When collecting fractions in the fraction collector a tube or plate type is chosen and the fractions will be collected in the first available tube or plate of that type.



#### WARNING

**Fraction collector**. Do *not* fractionate flammable liquids. When running RPC methods, or other procedures using organic solvents, collect fractions through the Outlet valve.

## **Fractionation setup**

The following table describes the steps needed to set up fraction collection in the **Phase Properties** pane:

#### Step Action

1 Select the phase for which fractionation is required in the method outline and select the *Phase Properties* pane.

	Phase Properties 1	ext Instructions				
Method Settings	Sample Application					
Rubisco Elution	Vice the same flow rate of Flow rate 1.000 mi/mir	in Method Settings (0.000 - 25.000)				
•	<ul> <li>Inject sample from loop</li> </ul>	Fill the loop using	Manual load	~	(This we want	
Equilibration	O have seen to be a	Loop type	Capillary loop	*	Finesamp	e spec with E.00
	J O intern sarbe orecup one	Sample inlet				
•		Fill loop with	in 03.0			
emple Application		Empty loop with	1.00 mi			
-		Sample volume	in 00.0			
		Use the same	inlets as in Method	Settings		
Column Wash		Inlet A A1	Y			
		Inlet B B1	~	0.0 %		
Elution	1	Fill the system	with the selected b	ulter		
•						
Equilbration	Interupt sample applicate	matuv [00] mAU [6	000.0 · e000.01			
	Fractionate	Fractionation settings				
	O using outlet valve	Fractionation type	Fixed volume fra	ctionation	*	Advanced
	<ul> <li>using fraction collector</li> </ul>	Fractionation destination	96 deep well pla	te .	~	Park Dar
	O in watte (do not collect)	Peak hactionation destination	36 deep well pla	ta .		Settings
		Fixed fractionation volume	2.00 ml 10	00 - 2.20]		

**Note:** Text edited phases will show the fractionation options as variables in the Phase Variables list, see *Chapter 9 Text edit methods*, on page 286.

#### Step Action

- 2 Using the *Fractionate* radio buttons, select the fractionation type required for this phase:
  - **using outlet valve** enables fraction collection using the outlet valve. The Fractionation settings will change to reflect this choice, and the outlet valve position can be selected as the **Fractionation destination**.

<ul> <li>using outlet valve</li> </ul>	Fractionation type	Fixed volume fractionation	~	Advanced
<ul> <li>using fraction collector</li> </ul>	Fractionation destination	Out 1	~	Settings
🔿 in waste (do not collect)	Peak fractionation destination	Out 1	×	Peak Frac Settings
	Fixed fractionation volume	2.00 ml [0.01 - 20000.00]		
	Peak fractionation volume	2.00 ml (0.01 - 20000.00)		

• **using fraction collector** enables fraction collection in the fraction collector. The Fractionation settings will change to reflect this choice, and the desired **Fractionation destination** can be chosen from the drop-down list.

using outlet valve	Fractionation type	Fixed volume fractionation	~	Advanced
<ul> <li>using fraction collector</li> </ul>	Fractionation destination	96 deep well plate	~	Settings
🔿 in waste (do not collect)	Peak fractionation destination	96 deep well plate 48 deep well plate		Peak Frac Settings
	Fixed fractionation volume	24 deep well plate		
	Peak fractionation volume	8 ml tubes 15 ml tubes	~	
		50 ml tubes 50 ml tubes, full rack		

- in waste (do not collect) will send the eluent to the waste.
- 3 Edit the *Fractionation settings* as appropriate. For detailed information on these settings see the online help for the phase, refer to *Getting help when editing Phase Properties, on page 36.*

## 3.10 Sign methods electronically

## Introduction

Methods can be signed electronically to enhance data file security. Once a method has been signed, it is not possible to edit the method.

Tip: To edit a signed method create a new method using the settings in the signed method by selecting *File:Save As...* and save the method with a new name.

# Sign a method electronically in the Method Editor

The table below describes how to sign a method electronically in the *Method Editor*:

1	Selec	t File:Sign Method	
	File		
	1	New Method	Ctrl+N
	1	New Method Queue	
	12	Open	Ctrl+O
		Close	
		New Folder	
		Save	Ctrl+S
		Save As	
		Scale or Convert Me	ethod
		Sign Method	2

Result: The Sign Method dialog opens.

Sign method View signatu	res
Signing user Log on password Full name Job title Signature description	David T  Dave Tomkins  Senior Protein Specialist  Approval for run
Signature password	OK Cancel

• The *Signing user* field shows the user currently logged on.

If you are to sign the method but are not the one logged on to UNICORN, select your user name in the *Signing user* drop-down list. Your *Full name* and *Job title* are displayed.

- Type your *Log on password* to UNICORN.
- Type a *Signature description* if appropriate.
- Type your Signature password and click OK.

Result: The method has been signed.

3.11 Import and export methods

## Introduction

UNICORN methods are stored internally in the UNICORN database. It is however possible to export entire methods or individual phases to a zip file on the local computer so that they can be imported again later into the same database installation, or imported into another database installation.

Alternatively methods or phases can be exported as plain text files or Excel files, which may be useful for documentation purposes.

# Export a phase or method to UNICORN

The following table outlines the steps needed to export a method or a phase for later import into UNICORN.

#### Step Action

1 In the Method Navigator, select the method to be exported.





In the *Phase Library* pane, select the phase to be exported.



- Note:Only Personal or Global phases may be exported.Note:Only single methods or phases may be exported, it is not possible
  - to write multiple methods or phases to a single zip file.

3.11 Import and export methods

#### Step Action

2 Choose File:Export:to UNICORN:Export Method to UNICORN....

Result: The **Export** dialog opens.



- **Note:** In the case of phases, it is also possible to right-click on the phase name and select *Export...* from the context menu.
- 3 Choose a file name and location and click the *Save* button to save the zip file.

# Export a method to a plain text file

The following table outlines the steps needed to export a method as a plain text file or to Excel.



1 In the Method Navigator, select the method to be exported.



#### 2 Choose File:Export:Export Method Externally....

Result: The Export Externally dialog opens.

Export items: Text Instructions	Phase range ⓒ All	¢	
🔲 Variable List	O Phase:	Method Settings	8

- 3 Choose which *Export items* to include by checking the appropriate boxes.
- 4 Choose whether to include *All* phases or only a specific *Phase* by selecting the appropriate *Phase range* option.

3.11 Import and export methods

5

7

#### Step Action

To add further information to export, click the *Options* >> button. *Result*: The *Include* options will be expanded.

Export items:	Phase range: () All	
Variable List	O Phase:	Method Settings
<b>@</b>	s	ave As Cancel Options <
Include		
Properties	Design of	experiment 📃 Start protocol
Properties	Design of Counting	experiment Start protocol
<ul> <li>Properties</li> <li>Signatures</li> <li>Method Duration</li> </ul>	Design of Scouting BufferProir	experiment Start protocol Questions coipes Result name & location

6 Select information to add to the text file by checking the appropriate options.
 Note: Information that is not included in the method will appear greyed out and cannot be selected.

To save the text file with the selected information included click the *Save As...* button.

Result: The **Export** dialog opens.



Step	Action
8	Choose whether to save to an <b>ASCII</b> file or to an <b>Excel</b> file from the <b>Save as type</b> drop-down menu.
9	Choose a file name and location and click the <i>Save</i> button to save the zip file.

### Import a phase into UNICORN

Phases that have previously been exported as zip files can be imported back into UNI-CORN. Plain text files or Excel files cannot be imported since there is no guarantee that they contain all the information UNICORN needs to recreate the phase. The following table outlines the steps needed to import a phase.

Step Action	Ste	р	Action
-------------	-----	---	--------

#### 1 Select *File:Import:Import Phase...*.

Result: The Import dialog opens.

Import						? 🔀
Look in:	C Methods Folde	t	~	0 🕫	🖻 🛄 •	
My Recent Documents	W Affinity Meth Rubisco Elution.	nod.zip zip				
My Documents						
My Computer						
	File name:	Rubisco Elution.zip			*	Open
My Network	Files of type:	Zip Files(*.zip)			~	Cancel

2

Browse to the required zip file in the *Import* dialog.

#### 3.11 Import and export methods

3

#### Step Action

Open the file by selecting it and clicking the **Open** button, or by doubleclicking on the file name.

Result: The Import Phase Library dialog opens.

Import Pha	se Library			
Phase Name	Rubisco Elui	tion		
	🔿 Global	Personal		
0			ОК	Cancel

- 4 Type a new *Phase Name* if required, and select whether the phase should be imported as *Global* or *Personal*. *Global* phases are available to all users, *Personal* phases only to the currently logged-on user.
- 5 Click the **OK** button to import the phase.

## Import a method into UNICORN

1

Methods that have previously been exported as zip files can be imported back into UNICORN. Plain text files or Excel files cannot be imported since there is no guarantee that they contain all the information UNICORN needs to recreate the method. The following table outlines the steps needed to import a method.

Step Action

Select File:Import:Import Method....

Result: The Import dialog opens.

Import						? 🛛
Look in:	🗀 Methods Folde	er	~	0 🦻	• 🛄 🔁	
My Recent Documents Desktop My Documents	∰m) Affinity Met	hod.zip				
	File name:				~	Open
My Network	Files of type:	Zip Files(*.zip)			~	Cancel

2

Browse to the required zip file in the *Import* dialog.

#### 3.11 Import and export methods

3

#### Step Action

Open the file by selecting it and clicking the **Open** button, or by doubleclicking on the file name.

Result: The Import Method dialog opens.

Folder na	ime	System	Last modified	Created by	
SI	EHC9J2DP3JD\UNICORN\UNI.				
· P	Adam		5/18/2009 1:23:0	Default	
æ 🎴	Anne		5/18/2009 1:22:4	Default	
	Bridget		5/18/2009 1:22:5	Default	
æ 📔	Charlie		5/18/2009 1:23:1	Default	-
۰ E	Christine		5/18/2009 1:23:0	Default	
· 🖻	David E		5/18/2009 1:23:3	Default	
æ 📔	David T		5/18/2009 1:23:2	Default	
B 📔	DefaultHome		9/25/2008 1:07:1	System	
± 📔	Francine		5/18/2009 1:24:1	Default	
	5 . · ·		E H 0 10000 4 00 E	<b>D</b> (1)	>
ame:	My Affinity Method				
ano.					

- 4 Browse to the required folder in the database and type in a new *Name* if necessary.
- 5 Select a **System** for the method from the drop-down menu.

6 Click the *Import* button to import the method.

Result: The imported method will be opened in the Method Editor.

**Note:** If the imported method contains instructions that are not supported by the selected system, the phases containing these instructions will be marked with an error symbol.

# 4 Scouting

## Introduction

Scouting is used to repeat a series of method runs automatically using different settings or with predetermined changes in the values for one or more *Variables*. A *Scouting scheme* is defined as part of the method. This chapter gives an overview of scouting and the scouting workflow and describes how to set up and edit a *Scouting scheme*.

Scouting is ideal for relatively simple variable combinations. When designing experiments to analyse several variables at the same time, it is advantageous to use the **Design of Experiments** (**DoE**) tool. This tool applies statistical methods for generating scouting runs that provide the most information with as few runs as possible, thus economising on time and sample amounts. For details on **DoE**, see *Chapter 5 Design of Experiments, on page 116*.

## In this chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	See page
4.1 Overview	104
4.2 Set up and edit a Scouting scheme	106

## 4.1 Overview

## Introduction

Scouting can be used to generate a series of method runs where one or more *Variable* parameters are varied in the same method. The resulting *Scouting scheme* is defined and saved in the method.

This section gives an overview of scouting and the scouting workflow.

### When to use scouting

Some typical situations where scouting is useful are for instance when the objective is to:

- screen for the best column
- find the optimal pH
- test column capacity (sample volume)
- find the optimal flow rate for binding and elution
- optimize gradient length and slope
- optimize step gradients.

### Scouting workflow overview

To perform a scouting experiment the following steps must be performed:

• Create a method and decide appropriate run parameters (i.e.,variables) to be varied in the experiment

See *Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25* for information about how to create methods.

• Set up a scouting scheme

This includes selecting variables, inserting runs/series of runs with different variable settings.

To define new variables for a method, see Section 9.2.4 Method variables, on page 315 for information.

• Start and monitor the scouting run

This is performed in **System Control**. See ÄKTA avant and UNICORN 6.1 User Manual for information.

**Note:** The *Start protocol* will only be displayed before the first run in the *Scouting* experiment.

#### • Evaluate the results of the scouting run

This is performed in the *Evaluation* module. All results from *Scouting* runs performed at any one time are stored in the same folder. See *UNICORN 6.1 Evaluation Manual* for information.

## 4.2 Set up and edit a Scouting scheme

## Introduction

Any parameter can be scouted, provided that it can be defined as a variable in the method.

This section describes how to set up and edit a *Scouting scheme*.

## Set up a scouting scheme

The table below describes how to set up a *Scouting* scheme where the flow rate is varied. In this example, the flow rate is varied between 0.5 and 3 ml/min.

**Note:** The *Start protocol* will only be displayed before the first run in the *Scouting* experiment.

Step	Action				
1	Create experin in your	a method and decide appropriate run parameters to be varied in the nent. The run parameters to be varied should be defined as <b>Variables</b> method.			
	See Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25 for information about how to create methods.				
	See Section 9.2.4 Method variables, on page 315 for information about how to define new variables.				
	Тір:	Many variables that can be used for scouting are already defined in either the Method Settings phase or the predefined phases. Note that some variables may be hidden or unused in the method. New variables often do not need to be defined.			

Step	Action						
2	In the <b>Method Editor</b> :						
	Click the <i>Scouting</i> icon in the toolbar						
	or						
	Select Tools:Scouting						
	Tools         Start Protocol         Evaluation Procedures         Scouting         Design of Experiments						
	<i>Result</i> : The <b>Scouting</b> dialog opens with the <b>Scouting Variables</b> dialog dis- played on top.						

HUN	Scouring variables

**Note:** When editing a scouting scheme, only the **Scouting** dialog is displayed.

Step Action	
-------------	--

- 3
- In the **Scouting Variables** dialog, select the appropriate variable(s) to be varied by checking the appropriate box(es).
  - Check the **Show details** box if you want to display variables defined as detailed variables in your method. These are rarely used as scouting variables.
  - Check the **Show unused variables** box if you want to display variables currently not used in the method.
- Click OK.

*Result:* The *Scouting* dialog is updated with the selected variable(s) and their default value(s).

couting			
Scouting pa	arameters		
Run	Included	Method Settings, METHOD SETTINGS, Flow rate {ml/min}	
1	~	1.000	
	-		
-			
🕖 Sel	ect Variables	Insert Run Series	Remove Run Clear All OK Cancel

It is possible to insert runs one by one (see step 4) or insert series of runs (see step 5).
### Step Action

4 To insert runs one by one:

 In the Scouting dialog, select a row in the Scouting parameters table and click Insert Run.

*Result:* A new row is added below the selected run. The variable value from the selected row is copied to the new run. All chosen variables are displayed in a separate column.



- In this example, click in the *Flow rate {ml/min}* column for the appropriate run and edit the flow rate value.
  - Note: Changing variable values in the scouting scheme does *not* change the values in the *Variable List* in the *Duration and Variables* dialog or in the text instructions. The actual variable values used for each run in the scouting scheme are saved in the result file. To change the default values, the variable values must be edited in the *Phase Properties* pane.
- Repeat until all runs are included using the correct variable values.
  - **Note:** The scouting scheme can also be edited just prior to starting the method run in the Start Protocol. Here variable values can be changed and individual runs included or excluded.

5

Result: The Insert Series dialog for the selected variable opens.

27 38.18	-
), how much the ich run and how i	value shall be many runs to add.
25.000	
Step by:	Number of runs:
0.000	
	e, how much the ch run and how 25.000 Step by: 0.000

7

Step	Action
6	In the <b>Insert Series</b> dialog:

- Enter *Start value:*, *Step by:* and *Number of runs:*. In this example, 0.5, 0.5 and 6.
- Click OK.

Result: The Scouting parameters table is updated.

Scouting parameters		
		Method Settings,
Bun	Included	Flow rate {ml/min}
man	menaded	
1	Image: A start of the start	0.500
2	<b>V</b>	1.000
3	<b>~</b>	1.500
4	<b>~</b>	2.000
5	<b>~</b>	2.500
6	<b>~</b>	3.000

Alternatively, to enter either consecutive or non-consecutive integer values:

• Check the Set as integer values box in the Insert Series dialog.

*Result:* The following alternative *Insert Series* dialog for the selected variable opens.

Insert Series For Flow rate 🛛 🔀			
Enter variabl example, 1,3	e ranges separated by commas. For ,5•12		
Range: 0.00	00 - 2 <mark>5.000</mark>		
-			
-			
-			
	OK Cancel		

- Enter the appropriate range, for example: 1-3,5-7
- Click OK.

Result: The Scouting parameters table is updated.

Scouting parameters			
		Method Settings, METHOD SETTINGS	
Run	Included	Flow rate {ml/min}	
1	<b>~</b>	1.000	
2	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>	2.000	
3	<b>~</b>	3.000	
4	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>	5.000	
5	<b>~</b>	6.000	
6	<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	7.000	

Step	Action
8	Click <b>OK</b> in the <b>Scouting</b> dialog to save the scouting scheme.
	Save the method.

# Add, delete or edit variables in the Scouting scheme

1

The table below describes how to add, delete or edit variables in the *Scouting scheme*.

Step	Action
------	--------

Open the **Scouting scheme** (see block Set up a scouting scheme, on page 106).

Run	Included	Method Settings, METHOD SETTINGS, Flow rate {ml/min}	
1	<b>V</b>	0.500	
2		1.000	
3		1.500	
4		2.500	
	0.		
	_		

2

### Step Action

To add or delete variables in the **Scouting scheme**, click Select Variables. in the **Scouting** dialog.

Result: The Scouting Variables dialog opens.

Column position Column wash volume Delta column pressure limit Empty loop with Equilibration volume Equilibration volume_1 Fill system (Equilibration) Fill system (Equilibration) Fill system (Equilibration)	Colum	n	~
Column wash volume Delta column pressure limit Empty loop with Gquilibration volume Equilibration volume_1 Fill system (Equilibration) Fill system (Equilibration)_1 Fill system (Equilibr	Colum	n position	
Delta column pressure limit Empty loop with Cquilibration volume Cquilibration volume_1 Fill system (Equilibration) Fill system (Equilibration)_1 Fill syst	Colum	n wash volume	
Empty loop with     Equilibration volume     Equilibration volume_1     Fill system (Equilibration)     Fill system (Equilibration)_1     Fill system (Equilibration)_1     Fill system (Equilibration)_1	🔲 Delta	column pressure limit	
Equilibration volume     Equilibration volume_1     Equilibration volume_1     Fill system (Equilibration)     Fill system (Equilibration)_1     Fill system (Equilibration)_1	Empty	loop with	
Equilibration volume_1 Fill system (Equilibration) Fill system (Equilibration)_1 Fill system (Eq	📃 Equilit	ration volume	
Fill system (Equilibration) Fill system (Equilibration)_1	📃 Equilib	ration volume_1	
Fill system (Equilibration)_1	📃 Fill sys	tem (Equilibration)	
C Flow rate	📃 Fill sys	tem (Equilibration)_1	(272)
<u>&lt;</u>	Flow	rata	~
	5		2
	Show un	used variables	
Show unused variables	-		

3

- To add a variable to the *Scouting scheme*, check the appropriate box in front of the variable.
- To delete a variable from the *Scouting scheme*, clear the box in front of the variable.

If you can not find the appropriate variable:

- Check the **Show details** box to display variables defined as detailed variables in your method.
- Check the **Show unused variables** box to display variables currently not used in the method.

To define a new variable, see Section 9.2.4 Method variables, on page 315 for information.

Click OK.

Result: The Scouting parameters table is updated with the changes.

Step	Action
4	To edit a variable value for a run:
	• Select the appropriate row and the variable value cell in the <i>Scouting parameters</i> table.
	• Type a new value for the variable.
	<i>Result:</i> The variable value is updated.
	Note: Changing variable values in the scouting scheme does <i>not</i> change the values in the <i>Variable List</i> in the <i>Duration and Variables</i> dialog or in the text instructions. The actual variable values used for each run in the scouting scheme are saved in the result file. To change the default values, the variable values must be edited in the <i>Phase Properties</i> pane.
5	Click <b>OK</b> .
	Result: The Scouting parameters table is updated with the changes.
6	Add new scouting runs to the scouting scheme as required.
7	Click <i>OK</i> in the <i>Scouting</i> dialog to save the scouting scheme. Save the method.

# Add/delete runs in the Scouting scheme

The table below describes how to add runs and series of runs to the *Scouting scheme* and how to delete runs.

### Step Action

1

Open the **Scouting scheme** (see Set up a scouting scheme, on page 106).

Run	Included	Method Settings, METHOD SETTINGS, Flow rate {ml/min}	
1		0.500	
2		1.000	
3	Image: A start of the start	1.500	
4	<b>V</b>	2.000	
5		2.500	

Step	Action
2	• To insert a run after an existing run:
	Select the appropriate row in the <i>Scouting parameters</i> table and click Insert Run
	<i>Result</i> : A new row is added below the selected run to the <i>Scouting pa-rameters</i> table. The variable value from the selected row is copied to the new run. Edit the variable value as appropriate.
	• To insert a new series of runs:
	<ul> <li>Click in the appropriate variable column in the Scouting parameters table and click Series.</li> </ul>
	- Set up a series in the <i>Insert series</i> dialog and click <i>OK</i> (see <i>Set up a scouting scheme, on page</i> 106).
	<i>Result</i> : The new set of runs are inserted in the <i>Scouting scheme</i> with the values provided.
	• To delete runs from the Scouting scheme:
	- Select the row(s) in the <b>Scouting parameters</b> table and click           Remove Run
	Result: The selected runs are removed from the Scouting scheme.
	Or
	- Click Clear All
	<i>Result</i> : All runs are removed from the <i>Scouting scheme</i> . No scouting will be performed when starting the run.
	<ul> <li>To exclude a run from being used in the Scouting experiment but keep it in the Scouting scheme:</li> </ul>
	Clear the <b>Included</b> box in front of the appropriate run.
3	Click <b>OK</b> in the <b>Scouting</b> dialog to save the changes to the scouting scheme.

Save the method.

### About this chapter

This chapter describes how to set up an experimental design plan using the **Design of Experiments** tool in the **Method Editor** and how to evaluate the results of the runs in the **Evaluation** module. It also gives a brief overview of **Design of Experiments** and describes some basic terms and concepts used in the **Design of Experiments** tool in UNI-CORN.

### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	See page
5.1 Introduction to Design of Experiments	117
5.2 Create an experimental design	128
5.3 Run a scouting created with DoE	155
5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments	157

# 5.1 Introduction to Design of Experiments

### Introduction

This section gives a brief introduction to the basic terms and concepts used in **Design** of **Experiments** (**DoE**).

### What is Design of Experiments?

**Design of Experiments** (**DoE**) is a way to systematically vary several parameters simultaneously to obtain as much information about a process with as few experiments as possible.

### Why use DoE?

### Maximize the amount of information using a minimum number of runs

When trying to find optimal conditions for a process to obtain the best results, it is usually not possible to perform all experiments needed due to time or cost using a random experiment approach. The number of runs to be performed needs to be minimized at the same time as the information from the runs are maximized. **DoE** facilitates this by using a systematic approach for experimental set-up and statistical modelling for the results.

For example, it could be enough to obtain 80% information about a process. This level of information can be reached using a significantly lower number of experiments using **DoE** than using a random experiment approach as illustrated in the figure below.



### **Estimate parameter interactions**

In the simplest traditional approach to optimization experiments, one parameter is varied while all others are fixed. In this way optimal values may be found for each parameter. Using this approach, interaction effects between parameters might be missed that could lead to better optimization of a process.

In the DoE approach, process parameters are allowed to vary simultaneously, thus allowing the effect of each parameter individually as well as the combined effect of parameters to be estimated. Each parameter may have an optimum, but when combining the parameters, values may be found that together give a new optimum, even better than the optima for the separate parameters. The illustration below shows the different approaches in a graphical way.







### Obtain reliable maps of the system

Experiments are performed to assess the conditions for best processes or to obtain the product characteristics required. In order to make the necessary decisions we need tools or ways to make this as intuitive and easy as possible. In the evaluation of **DoE** results, different plots are created from the model. Decision making becomes more reliable when using tools that benefit from the created model. This "map" of the process helps to decide on, for example, how to progress, or whether the process is already optimized. Is the process robust? What experiments can be performed to verify the process?

# **DoE in UNICORN**

In UNICORN, **DoE** is used to systematically create an optimized set of experiments to be run. Depending on the objective and the number of parameters, a suitable design is suggested. An experimental plan is presented and a **Scouting scheme** is generated as a result from **DoE** containing the method runs to be performed. When the runs have been performed, the results can be analyzed in the **Evaluation** module. A model is created and a number of plots are generated to aid evaluation of the results. The model can be used to predict responses for new parameter settings and to optimize the parameter settings for a desired combination of responses (e.g., optimize the response combination "minimize the level of impurities and maximize the yield").

# **Factors and responses**

The table below lists the definitions of the **DoE** terms factors and responses and how to use them in UNICORN.

Term	Definition	In UNICORN
Factor	<ul> <li>The different parameters that may affect the process to be run.</li> <li>Factors may be either quantitative or qualitative.</li> <li>Quantitative factors are characterized by being found on a continuous scale for example, pH, flow rate and conductivity.</li> <li>Qualitative factors are characterized by being discrete (discontinuous), for example, column type, media type and buffer substance.</li> </ul>	The factors are connected to a variable in the method. For example, the factor pH may be connected to the variable BufferPro pH. In pre-defined methods, most useful parameters are already defined as variables. Note: To be able to vary a value for a process parameter in the method it must be de- fined as a variable. Low and high values are entered for the quantitative factors. The factors will be varied within this range.
Response	The output parameter(s) from a process. For example, capacity, yield and purity.	When evaluating the <b>DoE</b> runs, the measured response values for each experiment are entered in UNICORN.

# **DoE design**

The design is the setup of experiments with different combinations of factor settings resulting in a minimum number of experiments to be run to obtain as much information as possible.

UNICORN suggest a suitable design to be used in the experiment based on the:

- number of factors
- type of factors (quantitative or qualitative)
- experimental objective (screening, optimization or robustness testing)

There are different objectives and design types included in the **DoE** tool in UNICORN. See the following blocks for more information about design objectives and design types.

### **Design objectives**

The table below describes the different design objectives:

Design objective	Used when you want to	
Screening	Determine which factors are important in your process and the appropriate ranges for these factors.	
Optimization	Find the optimal factor settings for your process, that is, factor settings that give the desired responses.	
Robustness Testing	Determine the process robustness by making minor ad- justments of the factor settings and see if the responses are within the set specification limits. If the responses do not vary significantly due to the factor changes, the pro- cess is considered to be robust.	

### Example of how to use DoE for different objectives

To obtain maximum amount of protein after purification of a sample using a minimum number of runs, use **DoE** to find:

- important parameters (e.g., pH, conductivity) and the appropriate parameter ranges affecting this process
- the optimal parameter settings and any dependencies (interaction) between the parameters affecting the response of the product or process (e.g., yield or impurity level)

When the parameters affecting the process as well as their settings have been determined it is appropriate to test if the process is robust, that is, not affected by minor changes in the parameter settings. Neither the parameter settings selected or their interactions should affect the process if the process is to be considered robust.

A specific **DoE** setup is required for each step (i.e., screening for parameters or parameter settings, for optimization of parameter settings and for robustness testing). Each setup is a balance between the amount of information obtainable and the number of experiments that can be afforded. The process can be iterated and the initial screening results from one **DoE** can logically be used as input for the next **DoE** and so on.

### **Design types**

A design can be graphically illustrated by a box. The design box in the following examples illustrates designs where three different factors  $(X_1, X_2 \text{ and } X_3)$  are varied simultaneously. Each corner point is the experiment for a specific combination of the settings of the three factors (e.g., low value for  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  and high value for  $X_3$ ). The center point is the experiment where the different factors have the closest distance to all other factor settings, that is, the mean value.

The corner points are used to assess factor interaction effects. The center points are used to estimate the pure error and detect curvature. See *Model*, *on page 125* for detailed information about the terms interaction, curvature and pure error.

### Illustration of the design box

The illustration below (to the left) shows a design box with corner- and center points for the different factors  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$  and  $X_3$ . The illustration below (to the right) shows the factor values for one of the corner points. The arrow directions along the box edges denote the parameter change from low to high.



### **Different designs in UNICORN**

There are several types of designs available in UNICORN.

The table below describes three design variants illustrated by the design box. Different designs are used based on the objective and the experiment setup. The center point experiments are always included in all designs.

5.1 Introduction to Design of Experiments





# **Designs supported by UNICORN**

The table below briefly describes the design types that are supported by UNICORN.

Design type	Description		
L-designs	L-designs are a type of F in UNICORN. The table b 	ractional Factorial design. Different variants are available elow gives a short description of the designs.	
	L-design	Description	
	L9	Fractional design at three levels for up to four factors. You can estimate square terms but not all interactions.	
	L18	Fractional design with one factor at two levels and with up to 7 factors at three levels.	
	L27	Fractional design at three levels for up to 13 factors. You can estimate square terms but not all interactions.	
	L36	Fractional design at three levels for up to 13 factors. You can estimate square terms but not all interactions.	
	L-designs are useful wh	en performing <b>Screening</b> or <b>Robustness Testing</b> .	

# 5 Design of Experiments5.1 Introduction to Design of Experiments

Design type	Description
Plackett Burman	<ul> <li>Plackett Burman is a type of Fractional Factorial design with a lower resolution.</li> <li>This means that it is not possible to estimate any two-factor interactions using this design.</li> <li>Plackett Burman designs are useful when performing Screening or Robustness Testing.</li> </ul>
Rechtschaffner	<b>Rechtschaffner</b> is a saturated fraction of the 2 <sup>n</sup> and 3 <sup>n</sup> factorial designs that supports all the first order interactions and quadratic terms. <b>Rechtschaffner</b> is useful when performing <b>Optimization</b> and you have at least three factors in your experimental plan.
Full Factorial 2 levels	<ul> <li>Full Factorial 2 levels is an orthogonal (balanced) design with all combinations of the factor levels. Main effects and all interactions are clear of each other (not confounded).</li> <li>Full Factorial 2 levels designs are useful when performing Screening or Robustness Testing.</li> </ul>
Full Factorial 3 levels	<ul> <li>Full Factorial 3 levels is a full factorial design with every factor varied at three levels. You can estimate the full quadratic model.</li> <li>Full Factorial 3 levels designs are useful when performing Screening, Optimization or Robustness Testing. They are however not the primary choice for Screening or Robustness Testing.</li> </ul>
ССС	The <i>Central Composite Circumscribed</i> ( <i>CCC</i> ) design is composed of a full or fractional factorial design and star points. <i>CCC</i> designs are useful when performing <i>Optimization</i> .
CCF	The <i>Central Composite Face</i> ( <i>CCF</i> ) design is composed of a full or fractional fac- torial design and star points placed on the faces of the sides. <i>CCF</i> designs are useful when performing <i>Optimization</i> .
Box Behnken	<ul> <li>Box Behnken is a three level Response Surface Modelling (RSM) design. All design points, except the center points, are located at the center of the edges of the hypercube, and are also on the surface of a sphere. You can estimate the full quadratic model.</li> <li>Box Behnken is useful when performing Optimization and you have at least three factors in your experimental plan.</li> </ul>
Doehlert	<i>Doehlert</i> is a RSM design constructed from regular simplexes. <i>Doehlert</i> designs are useful when performing <i>Optimization</i> .

### Model

A model is created in the *Evaluation* module based on the response values measured or entered for each experiment in the *DoE* setup.

The model is a mathematical fit to all data (Multiple Linear Regression, MLR) and can be expressed as:

$$Y_n = f(X_1, X_2, ..., X_n)$$

where  ${\bf Y}$  is response and  ${\bf X}$  is factor

The model can be explained in a graphical way as shown in the illustration below. In this case the "model" is a linear relationship. The residual (error) between the measured data and theoretical data according to the model is minimized.



#### Factor

### Model details

A more detailed description of the model is provided by the following formula as shown in the illustration below. The example is valid for three factors,  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$  and  $X_3$  respectively.



As seen in the illustration above, the model can be divided into four parts, the Constant Term, the Linear Terms (main effects), the Two-way interaction terms and the Quadratic terms. The b-values are determined by the selected model. The Y-values are the response values that are entered in UNICORN.

The table below gives a brief description on how to interpret the different terms in the model.

5 Design of Experiments5.1 Introduction to Design of Experiments

Term	Graphical illustration	Description
Constant <b>b<sub>0</sub></b>	N/A	<b>b</b> <sub>0</sub> is the unknown constant term. It is the response of <b>Y</b> when the main effects are 0.
Linear (main effects) b <sub>1</sub> X <sub>1</sub> + b <sub>2</sub> X <sub>2</sub> + b <sub>3</sub> X <sub>3</sub>	Undistorted plane	The main effects are described by the linear terms. In the graphical illustration, this part of the model can be viewed as an undistorted plane. It will give an overall idea of where the optimum for your process is but not details on how the sampling plane is twisted or which curvature the plane has. This part of the model usually gives sufficient infor- mation when the objective is screening or robust- ness testing. The fractional factorial designs will give enough input to create the linear part of the model.
Two-way interaction <b>b</b> <sub>12</sub> <b>X</b> <sub>1</sub> <b>X</b> <sub>2</sub> + <b>b</b> <sub>13</sub> <b>X</b> <sub>1</sub> <b>X</b> <sub>3</sub> + <b>b</b> <sub>23</sub> <b>X</b> <sub>2</sub> <b>X</b> <sub>3</sub>	Twisted plane	The two-way interaction terms describe how the effect of one factor depends on the level of a sec- ond factor. In the graphical illustration, this part of the model can be viewed as twisted plane. This part is added to the model when the objective is screening. The fractional and full factorial de- signs will give input to the two-way interaction part of the model.
Quadratic $b_7 X_1^2 + b_8 X_2^2 + b_9 X_3^2$	Curved plane	The curvature of the sampling plane is described by the quadratic terms. This part is added to the model when the objective is optimization. The optimization designs will give enough information to create the quadratic part of the model.

### **DoE workflow in UNICORN**

The main steps when performing a **Design of Experiments** in UNICORN are:

### Step Action

# 1 Create a method for your process to be screened, optimized or tested for robustness

This includes defining the appropriate variables (if not already defined) that should be connected to the factors in **DoE**.

See *Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25* for information about how to create a method.

### 2 Set up an experimental design

This is performed in the *Method Editor* in the *Design of Experiments* tool. See *Section 5.2 Create an experimental design, on page 128* for more information.

### 3 Perform the runs in the Scouting scheme generated from DoE

See ÄKTA avant and UNICORN 6.1 User Manual for information about starting scouting runs.

**Note:** The *Scouting scheme* generated from *DoE* does not normally need to be edited. If for some reason this is absolutely necessary, care must be taken so that the results can be used during evalulation of the *DoE* results.

### 4 Perform statistical evaluation of a DoE scouting

This is performed in the *Evaluation* module.

See Section 5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments, on page 157 for more information.

# 5.2 Create an experimental design

# Introduction

This section describes how to set up a **DoE** in the **Method Editor**. A **Scouting** scheme is generated as a result containing the method runs to be run in **System Control**.

# In this section

This section contains the following sub-sections:

Section	See page
5.2.1 Set up an experimental design	129
5.2.2 Add responses and factors to an experimental design	138
5.2.3 Change design and design settings in a Design of Experiments setup	145
5.2.4 Divide the DoE runs into several scouting runs	149

# 5.2.1 Set up an experimental design

# Introduction

This section describes how to set up a *Design of Experiments* in the *Method Editor*.

# Create a method

Create a method for the process to be optimized. The table below briefly describes how to create a method.

Step	Action			
1	Create a method for the process to be optimized. See <i>Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25</i> for detailed information about how to create methods.			
2	Decide which run parameters that should be screened for or optimized in the experiment. If the run parameters are not already defined as variables, define the parameters as variables to be able to vary the values i the <b>DoE</b> setup and to connect them to the appropriate factors.			
	<ul> <li>See Section 9.2.4 Method variables, on page 315 for information about how to define new variables.</li> <li>Note: In the DoE setup factors are connected to the variables in the method.</li> </ul>			
3	Save the method.			

5 Design of Experiments 5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.1 Set up an experimental design

# Set up a new Design of **Experiments**

The table below describes how to set up a new **Design of Experiments** in the **Method** Editor.

Step	Action
1	In the <i>Method Editor</i> :
	• click the <b>Design of Experiments</b> icon in the <b>Toolbar</b>
	国
	or
	• solect Tools: Design of Experiments

select Tools:Design of Experiments

Too D	Start Protocol
_	Evaluation Procedures
<b>.</b>	Scouting
碅	Design of Experiments
1	Column Handling Ctrl+L

Result: The **Design of Experiments** dialog opens.

lesign of Experiments					
Responses Factors & Design Experi	ment				
Responses:					
Name	Abbreviation	Unit			
Click Add to define a response					
Add Edk	Delete				
				OK Canc	:el

### Step Action

3

2 To add responses to the **Design of Experiments**, click **Add...** 

Result: The Add Response dialog opens.

For detailed information about how to define and add a response, see Section 5.2.2 Add responses and factors to an experimental design, on page 138.

Add Response		
OPredefined:	Activity	*
O User defined:		
Abbreviation:	Act	Unit:
<b>@</b>		OK Cancel

- **Note:** It is possible to add new responses to the experimental design in *Evaluation*. These new responses will not be added to the method file as opposed to responses added in the *Method Editor*.
- When all responses are defined, select the *Factors & Design* tab.

sponses Fa	ctors & Design Experi	ment					
actors:							
Name		Abbreviation	Unit	Range	Method Variable	Method Phase	
Click Add to	define a factor						
Add	Edk	Delete					
Add	Edk	Delete					
Add Design sel	Edk	Delete		Design			Arlvancerl
Add Design sel Objective	Edk	Delete	<b>V</b>	Design		V	Advanced
Add Design sel Objective Total num	Edt	Delete	~	Design		×	Advanced)

5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.1 Set up an experimental design

4

### Step Action

To add factors to the **Design of Experiments**, click Add...

Result: The Add Factor dialog opens.

For detailed information about how to define and add a factor, see Section 5.2.2 Add responses and factors to an experimental design, on page 138.

Add Factor	
<ul> <li>Predefined:</li> <li>User defined:</li> <li>Abbreviation:</li> </ul>	Bed Height
Туре: 💿 Quar	titative Quantitative multilevel Qualitative Settings Low value High value Center point
Method phase:	Method Settings
Variable:	Don't connect the factor to a method variable.
0	OK Cancel

#### Step Action

5

When all responses and factors have been defined, select the objective for the **Design of Experiments**:

In the *Design selection* area in the *Factors & Design* tab, select the appropriate objective from the *Objective* drop-down list.

Design sele	ction			
Objective	Screening 🗸	Design	Full factorial 2 levels (1st choice)	~
Total numb	Screening Optimization RobustnessTesting	]		

*Result:* Depending on the selected objective, UNICORN suggests a suitable design to obtain sufficient resolution with as few experiments as possible in the *Design* list. The total number of runs are displayed for the suggested design.

Design sele	ction				
Objective	Screening	~	Design	Full factorial 2 levels (1st choice)	*
Total numb	er of runs, including center points: 7				

 It is possible to select the 2nd choice design in the Design drop-down list if appropriate. The 2nd choice design usually either requires a higher number of runs to be performed, or the resolution of the design is lower.

For information about how to view details for the selected design and/or to change to another design than the 1st or 2nd choice designs, see *Section 5.2.3 Change design and design settings in a Design of Experiments setup, on page 145.* 

5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.1 Set up an experimental design

6

Ste	D	Act	ion
0.00	P		

Click the **Experiment** tab.

Result: The Experimental Plan is displayed.

		a a cogr			
Exp. No.	Run	Included	Load pH (Sample Application-Sample inlet)	Load Conductivity (Sample Application-Sample inlet)	
N001	004		2(\$4)	2 (\$4)	
N002	002	¥	8 (S2)	2 (S2)	
N003	001	¥	2(\$1)	6 (\$1)	
N004	003	¥	8 (53)	6 (\$3)	
N005	007	$\checkmark$	5 (S5)	4 (S5)	
N006	006	$\checkmark$	5 (S5)	4 (S5)	
N007	005	<b>~</b>	5 (\$5)	4 (S5)	
E-ALC-	ntorn Cate				

The *Run* column shows the run order for the optimized *Scouting scheme* that is generated from the *DoE* when clicking *OK*.

**Note:** If excluding any of the runs in the *Experimental Plan*, the results may not be reliable for use in the *DoE* evaluation.

#### Step Action

7

In some cases it may be necessary to divide the **DoE** runs into two or more scouting runs, for example if there are too few sample inlet valves. Some of the runs can be excluded the first time and run during further rounds.

If limitations in the hardware exist this will be indicated in the *Experimental Plan* on the *Experiment* tab by the text *Not Enough Positions*. For information about how to proceed when, for example, the available sample inlet positions are not sufficient, see *Section 5.2.4 Divide the DoE runs into several scouting runs, on page 149*.

xperimen Exp.	tal Plan:	Linetated	Load pH	Load Conductivity	Load Concentration
No.	Hun	Included	(Sample Application-Sample inlet)	(Sample Application-Sample inlet)	(Sample Application-Sample inlet)
N001	001		6(\$1)	2 (51)	5 (\$1)
N002	006		8 (56)	2 (56)	5 (56)
NUU3	007		6 (S7)	15 (57)	5(57)
N004	009		8 (Not Enough Positions 1)	15 (Not Enough Positions 1)	5 (Not Enough Positions 1)
1005	002		6 (52)	2 (52)	20 (52)
NUUB	004		8(54)	2[54]	20 (54)
1007	000		6 (Buffer)	15 (Buffer)	20 (Buffer)
1008	003		8(53)	15(53)	20 (53)
1005	010		7 (50) 7 (55)	8.5 (55) 9.5 (55)	12.5 (55)
1010	010		7 (55)	0.0 (50) 0 E (CE)	12.5 (55)

5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.1 Set up an experimental design

### Step Action

8 To view the system setup, click *Edit System Setup...*.

Result: The Edit System Setup dialog opens.

Sample inlet				
Position		Load pH	Load Conductivity	
S1	~	2	6	
S2	*	8	2	
\$3	*	8	6	
S4	~	2	2	
S5	*	5	4	

In this example the variable connected to both factors is the *Sample inlet* valve.

The *Load pH* and *Load Conductivity* values are set for each sample inlet.

To change the position for a certain combination of *Load pH* and *Load Conductivity*:

• Select the appropriate position in the corresponding *Position* drop-down list.

**Note:** It is not possible to change to a position already used.

• Click OK.

*Result:* The changes are saved and you return to the *Design of Experiments* dialog.

Cto	n	Δ	cti		n
JLE	μ		Cu	U	

9

### • In the **Design of Experiments** dialog, click **OK**.

Result: The following dialog opens.



• Click OK.

*Result*: A *Scouting scheme* is generated with the runs to be performed. The method is displayed in the *Method Editor*.

- **Note:** If you change the *Scouting scheme*, the *DoE* experimental plan is changed and the results may not be reliable for use in the *DoE* evaluation.
- 10 Save the method including **DoE**.

# 5.2.2 Add responses and factors to an experimental design

# Introduction

This section describes how to add responses and factors to the **Design of Experiments** setup in the **Method Editor**.

# Add responses

The table below describes how to add responses to an experimental design:

Step	Action
1	Select the <b>Responses</b> tab.
	Design of Experiments
	Name       Abbrevation       Unit         Dick Add to define a response
	Ø   OK   Cancel

2

To add a response, click Add...

Result: The Add Response dialog opens.

Predefined:	Activity	2
O User defined:		
Abbreviation:	Act	Unit

Note:

It is possible to add new responses to the experimental design in *Evaluation*. These new responses will not be added to the method file as opposed to responses added in the *Method Editor*.

Step	Action

3

4

- To add a predefined response:
   Select the response to be added in the *Predefined* drop-down list.
  - To add a user defined response: Select **User defined** and type in your own response *Result*: **Abbreviation** is automatically filled in.
  - If applicable, enter unit for the response.

Add Response		
Predefined:	Elution Cor	nductivity
Abbreviation:	ECond	Unit mS
<b>@</b>		OK Cancel

### Click **OK**.

*Result*: The selected response is added to the *Responses* list in the *Design of Experiments* dialog.

Passan			
Name	Abbreviation	Linit	
Yield	Yiel		
Add Edit	Delete		

5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.2 Add responses and factors to an experimental design

# Add factors

The table below describes how to add factors to a **Design of Experiments**:

itep	Action Select the Factors & Design tab
	Design of Experiments
	Factors: Massa Akkeysétése Hard Danas Makkad Maikad Danas
	Click Add to define a factor
	Add Edt Delete Design selection Dipictive [Screening V Design V Advanced]
	Total number of runs, including center points:
	OK Cancel

### Step Action

2 To define factors, click **Add...** 

Result: The Add Factor dialog opens.

Add Factor	
<ul> <li>Predefined:</li> <li>User defined:</li> </ul>	Bed Height
Abbreviation: Type: 💿 Quar	BeHe Unit: Qualitative Multilevel Qualitative Settings Low value High value
Method phase: Variable:	Method Settings
0	Don't connect the factor to a method variable.

5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.2 Add responses and factors to an experimental design

Step	Act	ion	
3	To d	add a predefined facto	ır:
	•	Select the factor to be	added in the <b>Predefined</b> drop-down list.
		Result: Abbreviation of	and the correct <i>Type</i> radio button is selected.
	•	If applicable, type in th	ne <b>Unit</b> for the factor.
	То с	add a user defined fac	tor:
	•	Select <b>User defined</b> a	nd type in your own factor.
		Result: Abbreviation is	s automatically filled in.
	•	If applicable, type in th	ne <b>Unit</b> for the factor.
	•	Select what kind of fa button. The table belo	ctor it is by selecting the appropriate <b>Type</b> radio w describes the different types of factors:
		Type of factor	Description
		Quantitative	Quantitative factors are process parameters that can be measured and have values on a continuous scale (e.g., flow rate and pH values)
		Quantitative multi- level	To specify more than two levels for a factor, select the Quantitative multilevel type. For ex- ample, if your are performing an experiment at three different temperatures, 4°C, 10°C and 25°C.
		Qualitative	Qualitative factors are discrete discontinuous process parameters or categorical data (e.g., column type and type of salt used).

#### Step Action

- 4 Enter settings for the selected factor:
  - Quantitative factors:

Enter a *Low value* and a *High value* for the factor. The center point is automatically calculated.

Settings			
Low value	2		E
High value	8	-enter point	

- Quantitative multilevel factors:
  - Enter the discrete values for the factor in the different rows.
  - To add more rows, click the **Add** button.
  - A center point is automatically selected. To select another center point, choose the appropriate one in the *Center* drop-down list.

Settings		
	1	4
	2	6
	3	8
	4	10
	5	12
		Add
Center	8	~

- Qualitative factors:
  - Select or type in the parameters in the different rows.
  - To add more rows, click the **Add** button.
  - A center point is automatically selected. To select another center point, choose the appropriate one in the *Center* drop-down list.

Settings			
	1	HiLoad 1610 Q Sepharose	~
	2	HiPrep Q FF 1610	~
	3	HiScreen Capto Q	~
	4	HiScreen Q FF	~
	5	HiTrap Capto Q 5 ml	~
		Add	
Center	HiPr	ep Q FF 1610	*

5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.2 Add responses and factors to an experimental design

Step	Action
5	Select to which phase the factor is connected in the <i>Method phase</i> drop- down list.
	Method phase: Sample Application
	For example, if adding the predefined factor <i>Load pH</i> , the pH at loading is controlled in the method phase <i>Sample application</i> .
6	Select to which <i>Variable</i> the factor is connected in the <i>Variable</i> drop-down list.

Variable:	Sample inlet	~
	Don't connect the factor to a method variable.	

For example, if adding the predefined factor *Load pH*, the sample pH at loading is controlled by the *Sample inlet* valve position.

- **Note:** Variables connected to factors will be included in the **Scouting** scheme that is generated when completing the **DoE** setup.
- 7 If the factor is not connected to anything that can be controlled by UNICORN (e.g., if the experiment is performed in a cold room or in room temperature) check the box **Don't connect the factor to a method variable**.
  - Click **OK** to add the factor to the **Design of Experiments**.

Result: The factor will be listed on the Factors & Design tab.

Hoheo		Unit	Range	Method Variable	Method Phase	
oud pri	LopH		2 to 8	Sample inlet	Sample Application	
Add 5-0	Delete					
Add Edk	Delete					
Add Edit	Delete					Advanced

9

8

To add more factors, repeat this procedure.
# 5.2.3 Change design and design settings in a Design of Experiments setup

# Change design in a Design of Experiments setup

1

The design suggested by UNICORN can be changed to another design in the setup of the *Design of Experiments*. The settings for a selected design can also be edited. The table below describes how to change the default design and design settings (i.e., the number of center points and replicates) in a *Design of Experiments* setup:

### Step Action

In the *Factors & Design* tab of the *Design of Experiments* dialog, the suggested design is displayed in *Design* drop-down list.

Design sele Objective	n selection ctive Screening		Design	Full factorial 2 levels (1st choice)	~	Advanced
Total numb	er of runs, including center points: 7		2			

5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.3 Change design and design settings in a Design of Experiments setup

Step	Action	
2	Click the <b>Advanced</b> button to:	

- change to another design than the 1st or 2nd choice design available in the Design drop-down list (continue with step 3) and/or
- edit the settings for the currently selected design in the **Design** table (continue with step 4)

*Result*: The *Change Design* dialog opens displaying the designs that may be used for the current experimental setup and selected objective.

Jesign	Model	Recommend	ation
ÚL9	Linear		
🖓 L18	Linear		
L27	Linear		
🖬 L36	Linear		
🛯 Placket Burman	Linear	Second	
Full factorial 2 levels	Interaction	First	1
scription: thogonal (balanced) desig the factor levels. Main eff	n with all combinations ects and all interactions	- Design setup	
scription: thogonal (balanced) desig the factor levels. Main eff e clear of each other (not	n with all combinations ects and all interactions confounded). Default	Design setup No of Center Points:	3
scription: thogonal (balanced) desig the factor levels. Main eff e clear of each other (not ns for 'Full factorial 2 level	in with all combinations ects and all interactions confounded). Default s' is 4.	Design setup No of Center Points: Replicates:	3
scription: thogonal (balanced) desig the factor levels. Main eff e clear of each other (not ns for 'Full factorial 2 level	in with all combinations ects and all interactions confounded). Default s' is 4.	Design setup No of Center Points: Replicates: Total no of runs:	3 0 7

3

To change to another design, select the appropriate design in the **Design** table.

*Result*: The *Description* field shows a short description of the selected design.

For a description of which designs are supported by UNICORN and when they may be proposed, see *Designs supported by UNICORN*, on page 123.

Step	Action
4	The <b>Design setup</b> area shows the settings for the selected design.

Change the settings for No of Center Points and Replicates as appropri-• ate.

The table below describes the different settings:

Setting	Description
No of Center Points	The <b>No of Center Points</b> means that the center point experiment will be run the selected number of times.
	It is recommended to use at least three center points to be able to estimate the pure error, that is, the variation in the measurements.
Replicates	<i>Replicates</i> means that the whole experiments series (corner and center points) will be replicated the selected number of times.
Total no of runs	This field lists the total number of runs to be performed based on the number of center points and replicates.

The **Settings...** button is only active if a CCC design using star points is • selected. To change the default star point distance in relation to the design box, click Settings....

Result: The Star Distance dialog opens. Star Distance Enter the star distance for the CCF design. Star distance (0-5) 1.414 Default

ΟK

0

Change the Star distance as appropriate and click OK. To return to the default value, click Default.

Cancel

5.2 Create an experimental design

5.2.3 Change design and design settings in a Design of Experiments setup

Step	Action	
5	In the <b>Cl</b>	hange Design dialog, click OK.
	<i>Result:</i> C the <b>Desi</b> Note:	hanges in the <b>Change Design</b> dialog are saved and the settings in <b>gn setup</b> area in the <b>Design of Experiments</b> dialog are updated.
	Note:	for a previously saved DoE method, these will be lost and need to be redefined.

# 5.2.4 Divide the DoE runs into several scouting runs

### Introduction

If hardware limitations exist, for example too few sample inlet valve positions are available for the number of runs to be performed, the **DoE** runs can be divided into several scouting runs. This section describes how to divide a DoE run into several smaller runs.

# Divide DoE runs into several scouting runs directly in the Scouting scheme

It is possible to include/exclude runs directly in the generated **Scouting** scheme and edit, for example, the sample inlet positions. However, for complex experimental plans it is recommended to create multiple DoE methods, each using the same design but with different sub-sets of scouting runs (see below). As long as the designs are identical, the results can then be merged for analysis.

# Divide DoE runs into several scouting runs in the DoE setup

1

The table below describes how to identify hardware limitations in a DoE run.

#### Step Action

### In the **Design of experiments** dialog, select the **Experiment** tab.

Result: The Experimental Plan is displayed.

Exp.	Run	Included	Load Concentration	Load Conductivity (Sample Application-Sample inlet)	Load pH (Sample Application-Sample inlet)
N001	002		5(S2)	2 (52)	6 (S2)
N002	004		5 (54)	2 (\$4)	8(S4)
N003	007		5 (57)	15 (\$7)	6 (\$7)
N004	003		5 (53)	15 (53)	8 (53)
N005	800		20 (Buffer)	2 (Buffer)	6 (Buffer)
1006	001		20 (\$1)	2 (S1)	8(S1)
N007	006	~	20 (\$6)	15 (S6)	6 (S6)
N008	010		20 (Not Enough Positions 1)	15 (Not Enough Positions 1)	8 (Not Enough Positions 1)
1009	009	<b>V</b>	12.5 (S5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)
N010	005	<b>V</b>	12.5 (\$5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)
N011	011	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>	12.5 (\$5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (\$5)

- 2 If limitations in the hardware exist this will be indicated in the *Experimental Plan* by the text *Not Enough Positions* for the run(s) in the *Design of experiments* dialog. These runs are also excluded from the *Experimental Plan*.
- 3 Clear the *Included* box in front of the experiments to be excluded in the first set of runs. In the example below *Run 009* and *Run 010* are excluded from the first set of runs.

Exp	-		Load Concentration	Load Conductivity	Load off
No.	Hun	Included	(Sample Application-Sample inlet)	(Sample Application-Sample inlet)	(Sample Application-Sample inlet)
1001	002	<b>~</b>	5 (52)	2 (52)	6 (52)
1002	004	<b>~</b>	5 (S4)	2 (S4)	8 (S4)
1003	007	<b>V</b>	5 (S7)	15 (S7)	6 (S7)
N004	003	<b>~</b>	5 (53)	15 (S3)	8 (53)
1005	008	<b>~</b>	20 (Buffer)	2 (Buffer)	6 (Buffer)
1006	001	<b>~</b>	20 (S1)	2 (S1)	8 (S1)
1007	006	<b>~</b>	20 (S6)	15 (S6)	6 (S6)
1008			20 (Not Enough Positions 1)	15 (Not Enough Positions 1)	8 (Not Enough Positions 1)
1009	009		12.5 (\$5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)
1010	005	<b>~</b>	12.5 (\$5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)
N011	011	~	12.5 (\$5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)

Note:

Include at least one center point (runs 5, 9 and 11 in the above example) in each scouting run to have control of experimental variations.

Step	Action
4	Click <i>OK</i> .
	Result: The following warning dialog opens.
	Design of Experiments

<u>.</u>	You have excluded one or seve Note that all experiments must I to achieve a reliable model.	ral experiments. be performed
	Are you sure you want to exclu	de experiments?
	Yes No	

Click **Yes** in the warning dialog.

Result: The following message is displayed.

Method	Editor 🛛 🛛
٩	A Design of Experiments has been created for this method. Changes to the method or scouting scheme may affect the design.
	Do not show this message again.
	ОК

6 Click **OK** and save the method.

To define the second set of runs, open the **Design of experiments** dialog again and select the **Experiment** tab.

*Result*: The *Experimental Plan* is displayed.

esponses Factors & Design Experiment						
Experimental Plan:						
Exp. No.	Run	Included	Load Concentration (Sample Application-Sample inlet)	Load Conductivity (Sample Application-Sample inlet)	Load pH (Sample Application-Sample inlet)	
N001	002	<b>~</b>	5 (52)	2 (S2)	6 (52)	
N002	004	<b>~</b>	5 (S4)	2 (S4)	8 (S4)	
N003	007	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>	5 (S7)	15 (S7)	6 (S7)	
N004	003	<b>~</b>	5 (S3)	15 (S3)	8 (53)	
N005	008	<b>V</b>	20 (Buffer)	2 (Buffer)	6 (Buffer)	
N006	001	<b>~</b>	20 (S1)	2 (S1)	8 (S1)	
N007	006	<b>~</b>	20 (S6)	15 (S6)	6 (56)	
N008	010		20 (Not Enough Positions 1)	15 (Not Enough Positions 1)	8 (Not Enough Positions 1)	
N009	009		12.5 (S5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)	
N010	005	<b>~</b>	12.5 (S5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)	
N011	011	<b>~</b>	12.5 (S5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)	

8

5

7

Clear the *Included* boxes in front of all runs.

5.2 Create an experimental design

9

5.2.4 Divide the DoE runs into several scouting runs

### Step Action

Click the **Edit System Setup** button.

Result: The Edit System Setup dialog opens.

Sample inlet				
Position		Load Concentration	Load Conductivity	Load pH
S1	~	20	2	8
S2	~	5	2	6
S3	~	5	15	8
S4	~	5	2	8
S5	¥	12.5	8.5	7
S6	~	20	15	6
S7	~	5	15	6
Buffer	~	20	2	6
Not Enough Positions 1	~	20	15	8

### Step Action

10 Change the position for the inlet that did not have any position before to a valid position. The inlet that previously had the position must also be changed.

### Example:

Change the position for, in this example, the sample inlet position indicated by **Not Enough Positions 1** to **Buffer** position.

Sample inlet		· \\		
Position	Load Concentration	Load Conductivity	Load pH	
S1 🗸	20	2	8	
S2 🗸	5	2	6	
S3 🗸	5	15	8	
S4 🗸	5	2	8	
S5 🗸	12.5	8.5	7	
S6 🗸	20	15	6	
S7 🗸	5	15	6	
Buffer 🗸 🗸	20	2	6	
Buffer 🗸 🗸	20	15	8	

Then change the sample inlet position originally set to **Buffer** to **Not Enough Positions 1**.

Sample inlet				
Position		Load Concentration	Load Conductivity	Load pH
S1	~	20	2	8
S2	*	5	2	6
S3	*	5	15	8
S4	~	5	2	8
S5	~	12.5	8.5	7
S6	*	20	15	6
S7	*	5	15	6
Not Enough Positions 1	~	20	2	6
Buffer	~	20	15	8

The two inlet positions have been changed.

11 Click **OK** in the **Edit System Setup** dialog.

5.2 Create an experimental design

12

5.2.4 Divide the DoE runs into several scouting runs

### Step Action

In the *Experiment* tab, check the boxes in front of the runs to be included in the second set of runs.

Responses	Factors	& Design	Experiment		
Experimen	ital Plan:				
Exp. No.	Run	Included	Load Concentration (Sample Application-Sample inlet)	Load Conductivity (Sample Application-Sample inlet)	Load pH (Sample Application-Sample inlet)
N001	002		5 (S2)	2 (52)	6 (52)
N002	004		5 (S4)	2 (S4)	8 (S4)
N003	007		5 (S7)	15 (S7)	6 (S7)
N004	003		5 (S3)	15 (S3)	8 (S3)
N005	800		20 (Not Enough Positions 1)	2 (Not Enough Positions 1)	6 (Not Enough Positions 1)
N006	001		20 (S1)	2 (\$1)	8 (S1)
N007	006		20 (56)	15 (S6)	6 (S6)
N008		<b>V</b>	20 (Buffer)	15 (Buffer)	8 (Buffer)
N009	009	<ul> <li>Image: A set of the set of the</li></ul>	12.5 (S5)	8.5 (55)	7 (S5)
N010	005		12.5 (S5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)
N011	011		12.5 (S5)	8.5 (S5)	7 (S5)

**Note:** In the example shown here, one of the center points (run 9) is also included.

13 Click **OK** in the **Design of experiments** dialog.

*Result*: A new *Scouting scheme* is generated. Click *Yes* and *OK* in any warning and messages dialog that appear.

14 Save the method with a **new** name.

*Result:* The two scouting runs are ready to be run in sequence.

**Note:** In this example, you must change samples in one of the sample inlets before starting the second scouting run. It is not possible to just create a method queue, start it and leave the system.

# 5.3 Run a scouting created with DoE

### Introduction

This section describes how to view the optimized *Scouting* scheme generated from *DoE* and how to print the method including *DoE*. For information about how to start and monitor *Scouting* runs, see *ÄKTA avant and UNICORN 6.1 User Manual*.

# View the Scouting scheme generated from DoE

When creating a **Design of Experiments** the final step is the generation of the optimized **Scouting scheme**. The table below describes how to view the **Scouting** scheme generated from **DoE**:

Step	Action						
1	In the <i>Method Editor</i> :						
	Click the <i>Scouting</i> icon						
	or						
	Select Tools:Scouting.						
	<i>Result</i> : The following dialog is displayed as a reminder of that a <b>DoE</b> has						

been created for the method. If you change the *Scouting scheme*, the *DoE* experimental plan is changed and the results may not be reliable for use in the *DoE* evaluation.

Method	Editor 🛛 🔀
(į)	A Design of Experiments has been created for this method. Changes to the scouting scheme may affect the design.
	OK

5.3 Run a scouting created with DoE

2

### Step Action

### Click **OK**.

*Result:* The *Scouting* dialog opens displaying the *Scouting scheme* where it is possible to view the *Scouting* runs to be performed.

Run	Included	Sample A Direct samp Sampl	pplication Ile injection e inlet		
1	~	S1	~		
2		S1	*		
3		S2	×		
4		53	×		
6		S1	~		
7		S5	~		

3

Click **Cancel** or **OK** to close the **Scouting** dialog.

### Print method including DoE

Before starting the run, it is useful to print the method information to see, for example, which sample positions are used for the different runs. See *Section 3.7 Print a method*, *on page 79* for information about how to print the method.

# 5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments

# Introduction

This section describes how to perform statistical evaluation of **a DoE** scouting.

### In this section

This section contains the following sub-sections:

Section	See page
5.4.1 Workflow	158
5.4.2 Generate model	160
5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis	170
5.4.4 Analyze and evaluate the model - extended analysis	182
5.4.5 Edit the model	190
5.4.6 Use the model	193
5.4.7 Create and print reports	200

# 5.4.1 Workflow

# Introduction

This section describes the workflow when evaluating a **Design of Experiments** scouting.

### Workflow

The main steps when performing statistical evaluation of an experimental design are:

### 1 Generate model

This includes evaluating single **DoE** runs, opening the **DoE** result, and entering response data. The software will then generate a model.

### 2 Analyze and edit the model

This includes checking that the raw data is OK and performing a basic analysis of the model. The model may need refinement by removing insignificant terms, which should be done with care. Extended analysis can be performed for additional information.

### 3 Use the model

This includes generating a response surface plot as well as using the predictor and the optimizer.

- Generate response surface plot to get a map of the experimental area and information about how to proceed with new experiments.
- Use the predictor to predict response values based on entered factor settings (optimization experiments only).
- Use the optimizer to optimize responses based on entered criteria for factors and responses (optimization experiments only), for example maximizing response 1 and minimizing response 2 while keeping factor 1 constant and allowing the other factors to vary within a defined range.

Basic and extended reports can also be created for the experiment.

# Illustration of workflow

The illustration below shows a possible workflow for evaluating a **Design of Experiments** scouting:



5 Design of Experiments5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments5.4.2 Generate model

# 5.4.2 Generate model

### Introduction

This section describes how to open single **DoE** runs for evaluation, how to open **DoE** results and how to generate a model.

# Evaluate the results of the single DoE runs

Before opening the *DoE* result in the *Evaluation* module, it is recommended to evaluate the single runs included in the *Scouting* run.

The table below describes how to open and evaluate single runs in the *Evaluation* module:



Result: The Result Navigator is displayed.

#### Step Action

2

Browse for the result and double-click the result name (single runs are indicated by the chromatogram icon).

Results	Recent Runs Fin	d Results			
Open 🎁	🔁 🦨 Results	, DoE Results 🝷 🧾	]•		
Folder n	ame	Crea	ed by Las	t modified	1
8	📄 DoE results - KF	) Defau	ılt 5/6	/2009 4:40:47	
	🕼 DoE ID DoE	_1 Defau	ılt 5/1	2/2009 1:43:2	
	DoE ID DoE	_1 001 Defau	ılt 1/1	3/2009 3:21:4	
	🔊 DoE ID DoE	_1 002 Defau	ılt 1/1	4/2009 7:31:0	
	🔍 DoE ID DoE	_1 003 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:12:	
	🔊 DoE ID DoE	_1 004 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:18:	
	🔊 DoE ID DoE	_1 005 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:26:	
	🗔 DoE ID DoE	_1 006 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:31:	
	🔊 DoE ID DoE	_1 007 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:37:	
	風 DoE ID DoE	_1 008 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:42:	
	風 DoE ID DoE	_1 009 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:47:	
	風 DoE ID DoE	_1 010 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:52:	
	🔍 DoE ID DoE	_1 011 Defau	ılt 12/	18/2008 5:57:	

*Result:* The result of the run is opened and displayed in the *Evaluation* module.

- 3 Inspect the results visually and check that the runs have been performed as expected.
- 4 Evaluate the results for the run as appropriate. See UNICORN 6.1 Evaluation Manual for information about how to perform evaluation.
- 5 Save any changes.
  - **Tip:** It is possible to have a *Scouting* run result open at the same time even if a *DoE* result is open.
- 6 Repeat this procedures for all the runs included in the **DoE** result.

# **Open the DoE result**

The table below describes how to open a **DoE** result:

Step A	ction
--------	-------

1 In the *Evaluation* module, click the *Open Result Navigator* icon in the *Toolbar*.



Result: The Result Navigator is displayed.

2 Browse for the **DoE** result and double-click the result name (**DoE** results are indicated by the design box icon).



*Result:* The *Design of Experiments* box opens displaying the *DoE* scouting run.

Exp. No.	Run	Besut	Date created	Included	Load Mass	Load Conductivity	Load pH	Yield
1001	007	Capto adhere 007	5/12/2009 7:44 50 PM	13	75	2	6	
1002	005	Cipto adhere 005	5/12/2009 7:40:55 PM		300	2	6	
1003	000	Capto adhere 000	5/12/2009 7:46:39 PM	<b></b>	75	15	6	
004	011	Capto adhere 011	5/12/2009 7:53:24 PM		300	15	6	
005	003	Capto adhere 003	5/12/2003 7.48 33 PM		75	2	8	
300	005	Capto adhere 000	5/12/2009 7:43:02 PM		300	2	0	
007	002	Capto adhere 002	5/12/2009 7:34:48 PM		75	15	8	
800	010	Capto adhere 010	5/12/2009 7:51:19 PM		300	15	8	
009	001	Capito adhere 001	5/12/2009 7:32:08 PM		187.5	85	7	
010	004	Capto adhere 004	5/12/2009 7:38:34 PM	E I	187.5	85	7	
011	003	Capto adhere 003	5/12/2009 7:36:34 PM		187.5	85	7	

### **Generate model**

The table below describes how to generate a model for the **DoE** result:

Step	Action
1	Responses defined in the method appear in the result in the <b>Design of Ex-</b> <b>periments</b> box.
	To add or delete responses to the experiment, use the <i>Add Response</i> and <i>Delete Response</i> buttons. See <i>Add responses, on page 164</i> and <i>Delete re</i> -

2 To enter response data:

• Click in a response cell for the appropriate response and experiment, and type in the data (the *Yield* column in the example shown here).

Result: The data is entered in the cell.

sponses, on page 165 for more information.

Exp. No.	Run	Result	Date created	Included	Load Mass	Load Conductivity	Load pH	Yeld
1001	007	Capto adhere 007	5/12/2009 7-44-50 PM		75	2	6	205
\$002	005	Capto adhere 005	5/12/2009 7.40.55 PM		300	2	6	100 million (1997)
1003	008	Capto adhere 008	5/12/2009 7.46:39 PM		75	15	5	
1004	011	Capto adhere 011	5/12/2009 7:53:24 PM		300	15		
(005	009	Capto adhere 009	5/12/2009 7 40 39 PM		75	2	.8	
2005	006	Capio adhere 006	5/12/2009 7:43:02 PM		300	2	- 10 H	
1007	002	Capio adhere 002	5/12/2009 7:34:48 PM		25	15	- 10 ·	
1008	010	Capits adhere 010	5/12/2009 7:51:19 PM		300	15		
009	001	Capto adhere 001	5/12/2009 7 32:08 PM		187.5	85	1	
010	004	Capito adhere 004	5/12/2009 7:38:34 PM		187.5	85	7	
011	003	Capto adhere 003	5/12/2009 7:36:34 PM		167.5	85	7	

Tip:

Response data can be obtained from:

- external measurements (e.g., biological activity)
- peak data from UNICORN (e.g., HETP tests or resolution)
- Repeat this procedure for all experiments and responses.

3

Select the runs to be included in the calculations for generating the model by checking the *Included* box for the appropriate runs (usually all runs).

To insert a new run or to replace a failed run with a new run use the **Replace Result...** and **Insert Result...** buttons. See *Replace run results, on page* 167 and *Insert new runs, on page* 166 for more information about inserting and replacing runs.

Tip: Instead of replacing a failed run with a new run, the run can be excluded from the model calculations by clearing the *Included* box in front of the appropriate run. This will however often result in some loss of information.

5 Design of Experiments 5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments 5.4.2 Generate model

Step	Action
4	Click the <b>Analysis</b> tab.
	<i>Result:</i> A model is fitted to the entered data. For information about how to analyze the model, see <i>Section 5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis, on page 170.</i>

### Add responses

**Note:** Responses added in the *Evaluation* module will not be included in the original method.

The table below describes how to add a new response to the experiment:

### Step Action

1 In the *Design of Experiments* tab in the *Evaluation* module, click the *Add Response...* button.

Result: The Add Response dialog opens.

Add Response		
Predefined:	Activity	✓
Abbreviation:	Act	Unit
0		OK Cancel

- Select the response to be added in the *Predefined* drop-down list or define your own response by selecting *User defined* and type in your own response.
   Note: Abbreviation is automatically filled in.
- 3 Enter the **Unit** for the response, if appropriate.

### Step Action

4

### Click **OK**.

*Result*: The response is added to the *DoE* experiment.

Exp. No.	Run	Result	Date created	Included	Load Mars	Load Conductivity	Load pH	Yield	Activity
N001	007	Capto achere 007	5/12/2009 7 44:50 PM		76	2	6	83.5	
N002	005	Capto achere 005	5/12/2009 7:40:55 PM		300	2	6		
N003	008	Capto adhere 008	5/12/2009 7:46:39 PM		78	16	6		
N004	011	Capto adhere 011	5/12/2009 7:53:24 PM		300	15	5		
N005	009	Capto adhere 009	5/12/2009 7:48:39 PM		75	2	8		
N006	006	Capto achere 006	5/12/2009 7:43:02 PM		300	2	8		
N007	002	Capto adhere 002	5/12/2009 7:34:48 PM		75	15	8		
N008	010	Capto adhere 010	5/12/2009 7:51 19 PM		300	15	8		
N009	001	Capto adhere 001	5/12/2009 7:32:00 PM		107.5	8.5	7		
NOTO	004	Caplo adhere 004	5/12/2009 7:38:34 PM		187.5	85	3		
N011	083	Capto adhere 033	5/12/2009 7.36.34 PM		187.5	85	7		

# **Delete responses**

The table below describes how to delete a response from the experiment:

Step	Action					
1	In the <b>Design of Experiments</b> tab in the <b>Evaluation</b> module, click the <b>Delete Response</b> button.					
	Result: The <b>Delete Responses</b> dialog opens.					
	Delete Responses					
	Select the responses you want to delete. Responses:					
	☐ Activity ☐ Yield					
	Delete Cancel					
2	Check the box in front of the response to be deleted and click <b>Delete</b> .					
	Result: The response is deleted from the experiment.					

### **Insert new runs**

Runs can be inserted if there are runs missing in the experiment. This can be the case if the **DoE** run has been divided into two scouting runs. In that case there will be two **DoE** results.

The table below describes how to add a missing run result to the experiment:

Step Action

1

If runs are missing in the experiment, the rows for the missing runs are blank.

Exp. No.	Bus	Result	Date created	Included	Load Mass	Load Conductivity	Load pH	Yield
1001	007	Capto adhere method no ext	2009-05-12 19:44:50		75	2	6	
1002	005	Capto adhere method no ext	2009-05-12 19:40.55		300	2	6	
1003	008	Capto adhere method no est	2009-05-12 19:46:39		75	15	8	
1004	011				300	15	6	
1005	003	Capto adhere method no est	2009/05/12 19:48:39		75	2	8	
1005	006	Capto adhere method no ext	2005/05/12 19:43:02		300	2	8	
007	002	Capto adhere method no ext	2003-05-12 19:34:48		75	15	8	
800	010				300	15	8	
1009	001	Capto adhere method no ext	2009-05-12 19:32:00		107.5	0.5	7	
1010	004	Capto adhere method no ext	2009-05-12 19:38:34		107.5	85	7	
011	003	Capto adhere method no ext	2009-05-12 19:36:34		197.5	85	7	

2

To insert the missing runs, click the *Insert Result...* button.

Result: The Insert Result dialog opens.

Folder name	System	Last modified		^
📼 🛛 🔁 Capto adhere meth	od (1)	2009-05-12 20:00:	L	
Capato adhere	met	2009-05-14 12:51:	L	
😡 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:34:	L	
🗔 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:36:	L	
🗔 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:38:	L	
🔍 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:40:	L	
🗔 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:42:	L	
🗔 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:44:	L	
🗔 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:46:	L	
風 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:48:	L	
風 Capto adhere m	neth P2.9-10	2009-05-12 19:51:	L	
📧 🛛 📔 Capto adhere meth	od (2)	2009-05-12 20:00:	L	
🖭  🔚 Project 1		2009-06-22 13:47:	L	
🗉  🗎 🖿 🖻 🖻		2009-06-22 13:47:	L	
😐 🛛 📴 Project 3		2009-06-22 13:47:	L	
😐  📴 Project 4		2009-06-22 13:48:	L	
🖭 📴 Project 5		2009-06-22 13:48:	L	
📧  🛅 Project 6		2009-06-22 13:48:	L	
••••• • • • • •	- C)			

Step	Action	
3	Browse <b>Tip:</b>	and select the run(s) that should be inserted. The run order number is found at the end of the result name. This number is the same as in the <b>Run</b> column. This makes it easier to locate the runs to be inserted.
4	Click <b>OI</b> Result: <sup>-</sup>	<b>K.</b> The runs are inserted in the experiment.
5	lf a run messag	does not match any of the missing runs in the experiment an error ye will be displayed. Repeat from step 2 to insert the correct run.
	Insert Re	isult 🛛 🔀
	8	It is not possible to insert the result for the current experiment. The run number and factor settings must match in order to insert a result.
		OK
	Note:	The run to be inserted must have the appropriate factor settings.

### **Replace run results**

Runs can be replaced with a new run if, for example, the run has failed.

**Note:** If a run has failed, there is always a risk that experimental conditions that cannot be controlled may have affected the result (e.g., temperature in the lab, different batches of buffer preparation etc.) Therefore, it is not always a good idea to replace a failed run with a new one. Re-running a centre point experiment will help in keeping track of uncontrolled variations.

The table below describes how to replace a run result:

5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments

5.4.2 Generate model

### Step Action

1

In the *Experiment* tab of the *Design of Experiments* box, select the result to be replaced in the *Result* column in the *Experiment* table.

			5-010 C160-00	included	Load Mass	Load pri	Load Conductivity	11010
101	009	Capto adhere 009	2009/06/04 12:52:44	2	76	6	2	83.5
02	001	Capto adhere 001	2009-06-04 12:37:27	1	300	6	2	\$2.2
03	008	Capto adhere 008	2009-06-04 12:51:02		75	8	2	92.2
04	006	Capto achere 006	2009/06/04 12:47:48	1	300	8	2	99.5
05	007	Capto achere 007	2009/06/04 12:49:30	1	75	6	15	66.8
30	010	Capto adhere 010	2009-06-04 12:54 16	1	300	6	15	90.1
07	011	Capto adhese 011	2009-06-04 12:56 23	1	75	8	15	71.2
08	003	Capto achese 003	2009/06/04 12:42:31	19	300	8	15	94.7
09	005	Capto achere 005	2009-06-04 12:46:07	1	187.5	2	8.5	88.6
10	002	Capto achere 002	2009-06-04 12:40-41	1	107.5	7	65	60
11	004	Capto adheie 004	2009-06-04 12:44 12	1	187.5	7	85	87

2

Click the *Replace Result...* button.

Result: The **Replace Result** dialog opens.

Replac	ce Result		
Folde	er name	Last modified	<u>^</u>
÷	🛅 User1	2009-05-20 10:12:1	
۰	🛅 User2	2009-05-20 10:18:1	
÷	🚞 User3	2009-05-20 10:22:0	
	🛅 User4	2009-05-20 10:31:0	
	🛅 User5	2009-05-20 10:32:4	
÷	🛅 Lab1	2009-05-20 12:44:4	
۰	🛅 Lab2	2009-05-20 13:00:3	
	🛅 Lab3	2009-05-20 13:49:1	
	🛅 Lab4	2009-05-20 13:52:4	
	📄 Lab5	2009-05-20 13:55:2	
	🗉  🛅 Lab5 (Manual)	2009-06-08 16:14:3	
	🗉 🗧 Column Handling Work Station	2009-06-09 12:35:2	
	🗉 📴 Back up	2009-06-09 13:24:1	
	😑 🛛 📴 DoE Workstation	2009-06-09 18:45:0	
	🔍 Capto adhere 001	2009-06-04 12:40:3	
	🔊 New run Capto adhere 002	2009-06-04 12:42:2	
	🛄 Capto adhere 002	2009-06-04 12:42:2	
	🗔 Capto adhere 003	2009-06-04 12:44:0	
0	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Cancel

- 3 Browse and select the run that should replace the selected run.
- 4 Click OK.

*Result*: The new run is listed in the *Experiment* table.

### Step Action

5

If the run does not match the run to be replaced an error message will be displayed. Repeat from step 2 to insert the correct run.



Note: The run to be inserted must have the appropriate factor settings.

5 Design of Experiments5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis

# 5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis

### Introduction

This section describes how to perform basic analysis of the model and how to evaluate the model.

### Check the raw data

Before starting to analyze the model, the raw data must be checked to ensure that the correct conclusions can be drawn in the analysis and evaluation of the model.

The table below describes how to perform some initial checks that the raw data is OK:

### Step Action

1

Select the **Analysis** tab, if not already selected.

*Result:* The *Analysis* tab opens showing 4 plots for each response: the Replicate plot, the Summary of fit plot, the Coefficient plot and the Normal probability plot of residuals. To be able to see all plots use the vertical scroll bar.





Each arrow in the plot represents an experiment.

In a good replicate plot (as shown in the example above), the replicate runs should show as small a variation as possible (experiments **9**, **10** and **11**).

There should normally be some variation across the dataset of non-replicate experiments. However a single experiment should not deviate dramatically from the rest.

**Note:** When a robustness test has been performed, variations in the data should instead be as small as possible.

5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments

3

5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis

### Step Action

The replicate plots can also be used to identify outliers. If, for example, a single experiment deviates a lot from the rest of the experiments (see plot to the left below), or if a replicate deviates a lot from the rest of the replicates (see plot to the right below), this run could be an outlier.







In a normal distribution of residuals for a good model, the experiments should be distributed close to a straight line and also should lie within a **Standard***ized Residuals* range of -4 to +4 SD (standard deviations). Single experiments that deviate from this may be outliers.

A non-linear distribution of experiments may also indicate the presence of insignificant missing terms, for example curvature of the model. See *Analyze* and interpret the model - basic analysis, on page 174 and Section 5.4.4 Analyze and evaluate the model - extended analysis, on page 182.

5 If the raw data is OK, continue with the basic analysis of the model described in Analyze and interpret the model - basic analysis, on page 174.

5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments

5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis

### Step Action

6

If outliers are detected, try to identify why. The table below gives a few examples of why outliers may be detected. You may also look at the plots in the extended analysis to get more information about the experiment.

Why outli- er?	What to do	See
Bad repli- cates	Check the individual result, and that correct response values have been entered. If the run has failed, consider per- forming new experiments and re- place the run.	<i>Replace run results, on page167</i> for information about how to replace a run result.
	The run may also be excluded from the experiment setup. Results that are true outliers should be excluded.	Generate model, on page 163 for information about how to exclude a run from the experiment
Deviat- ing ex- peri- ments	Check that the correct response values have been entered. Check the individual result. Consider performing new experi- ments to verify the deviation. If the results are indeed valid, the model may be inappropriate for the area.	See Section 5.4.2 Gener- ate model, on page 160 for how to check en- tered response data.

### Analyze and interpret the model - basic analysis

Before you can use the model and draw conclusions from it, the model needs to be analyzed to investigate if the model gives a good reflection of the experiment data.

**Note:** The plots must be analyzed for each response. A model can be good for one response but not for another. In some cases a good model cannot be obtained when several responses are included in the same model. In this case, try fitting an individual model for each response separately.

The table below describes how to perform a basic analysis of the model:

### Step Action

1 Select the **Analysis** tab, if not already selected.

*Result*: The *Analysis* tab opens showing four plots for each response: the Replicate plot, the Summary of Fit plot, the Coefficient plot and the Normal probability plot of residuals. To be able to see all plots use the vertical scroll bar.



5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments

5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis



The bars in the plot describe different statistical calculations for each response, measuring how good the model is. It is the contribution of all values that together indicate if the model is good. A good model has high values for all parameters as seen in the plot above. The table below gives a description of the parameters:

Step	Action					
	Coefficient value for	Description				
	R2	$R^2$ describes how well the model fits the current data. It can vary between 0 and 1, where 1 equals a perfect model and 0 corresponds to no model at all. A high $R^2$ -value is necessary for a good model but not sufficient on its own.				
		useful model.				
		Note:R2 Adj is the fraction of variations in the response data that is explained by the model, adjusted for degrees of freedom.R2 does not take into account degrees				
		of freedom.				
	Q2	Q <sup>2</sup> describes how well the model will predict new data. It can vary between -∞ and 1. The higher Q <sup>2</sup> -value, the better indicator of how well the model will predict new data.				
		$Q^2$ >0.5 is good and $Q^2$ >0.9 is excellent.				
		$Q^2$ is a better indicator of the usefulness of the model than $R^2$ .				
		<b>Note:</b> R <sup>2</sup> should <b>not</b> exceed Q <sup>2</sup> by more than 0.2-0.3 for a good model.				
	Model Validity	Model validity is only available if replicated exper- iments have been performed.				
		A model validity>0.25 indicates a good model.				
		A model validity<0.25 indicates a significant "lack of fit", that is the model error is significantly larger than the pure error (reproducibility).				
	Reproducibility	A reproducibility<0.5 indicates that there is a large pure error and poor control of the experimental setup (high noise level).				

If the *Summary of Fit* plot does not look good, there may be several reasons for this. The table below lists a few.

5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments

5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis

Step /	Action
--------	--------

Summary of Fit plot value	Possible cause	What to do
Low Q <sup>2</sup> and model validity	Non-significant two- way interactions may be present?	Look at the coefficient plot (see step 3) and the Interac- tion plot to see if there are in- teraction effects.
	Curvature in the mod- el. Is there a need of adding quadratic terms to the model?	Look at the <b>Residual vs. vari-</b> able plot (see Residuals versus variables plot, on page 182) and the <b>ANOVA</b> table (see ANOVA table, on page 187) to see if these also indicate cur- vature in the model. If you suspect curvature, try adding a quadratic term to the mod- el.
Model with moderate $R^2$ (~ 0.6) and $Q^2$ (~0.4)	Important factors may be missing. Are there uncontrolled factors that may affect the experiment?	If needed, perform more ex- periments.
The model is good for one response but not the other	It might be difficult to fit the same model to all responses.	Consider dividing the experi- ment in two or more to be able to fit one model/re- sponse.

### Step Action

3

Look at the normal probability plot of residuals. If the model describes the experimental data well, the experiments should be distributed close to a straight line, and lie within a **Standardized Residuals** range of -4 to +4 SD (standard deviations). See *Check the raw data, on page 170.* 

If the centre points (points 9, 10 and 11 in the illustration below) are not linearly distributed, this may indicate curvature in the model rather than true outliers. A low  $Q^2$ , model validity and significant lack of fit may also indicate curvature.



If you suspect curvature, try adding a quadratic term to the model. See *Section 5.4.5 Edit the model, on page 190* for more information.

5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments

5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis

### Step Action

4

Look at the coefficient plot for each response. The coefficient plot can be used to see which factors that affect your response, in which way they affect the response(s) and if there are any non-significant terms in the model.

In the example below the following terms have been included in the model:

- the main effects, that is, the loading conditions for mass, pH and conductivity (LoMa, LoCo and LopH)
- the two-way interaction effects for LoMa/LopH and LoCo/LopH
- **Note:** If an optimization design (CCC or CCF) has been used, quadratic terms for the model will also be included in the coefficient plot.



Scaled & Centered Coefficients for Yield

In the example above, the confidence limits (the black error bars shown on each green bar in the plot) do not cross zero. All of the terms are thus significant, with the **LoCo\*LopH** two-way interaction term being least significant.

Positive bars have a positive influence on the response, in this example the **Yield**, and negative bars a negative influence. From the above plot it is evident that increasing the **LoMa** (Load Mass) and **LoCo** (Load Conductivity) values, and decreasing the **LopH** (Load pH) value have a positive effect on the response.
#### Step Action

5 Non-significant terms can be identified by the confidence limits for a coefficient (the black error barrs) crossing zero. The diagram below shows the extreme example where no terms are significant.



Insignificant terms should be removed from the model one at a time before reanalysing the model.

- 6 If the model does not look good or non-significant terms are present, edit the model or continue with the extended analysis before editing the model. See Section 5.4.4 Analyze and evaluate the model - extended analysis, on page 182 and Section 5.4.5 Edit the model, on page 190 for more information.
- 7 If the model looks good and all terms are significant, continue with Section 5.4.6 Use the model, on page 193.

# 5.4.4 Analyze and evaluate the model - extended analysis

# Introduction

If you want to perform further analysis of the model in order to decide how to proceed, an extended report can be generated. The following plots and tables are displayed in the extended report in addition to the basic analysis:

- Residuals versus variables plot
- Residual versus run order plot
- Interaction plot
- Observed versus Predicted
- Main effects plot
- ANOVA table
- Correlation matrix

This section describes the plots in the extended report and gives information about how to evaluate the plots.

# Open and view plots for extended analysis

To be able to view the plots for extended analysis create an extended report.

See Create a report, on page 200 for information about how to create an extended report.

# **Residuals versus variables plot**

The **Residuals Plot vs. Variable** shows the residuals (i.e., the minimized error between the measured and theoretical data according to the model) for one factor and one response.

The residuals should be randomly distributed with no pattern. When a curved pattern can be seen in the plot this may indicate that a quadratic term is missing in the model. In this case try to add a quadratic term to the model and see if the model is improved.

See Section 5.4.5 Edit the model, on page 190 for information about how to add a quadratic term to the model.

The illustration below shows an example of a plot indicating that a quadratic term is missing in the model.



Load pH vs Residuals for Aggregate Content with Experiment Number labels

The illustration below shows the plot for the same experiment when a quadratic term has been added to the model. Now the residuals are randomly distributed with no pattern.



Load pH vs Residuals for Aggregate Content with Experiment Number labels

**Note:** When you find curvature in the model, the design for the experiment in the *DoE* setup should be changed to design allowing quadratic terms to be added to the model (Full factorial 3 levels, CCC, CCF, Box Behnken, Rechtschaffner or Doehlert). If the experimental setup is sufficiently stable the star point experiments alone can be run, otherwise it is recommended to rerun all experiments.

5 Design of Experiments5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments5.4.4 Analyze and evaluate the model - extended analysis

# Residual versus run order plot

The *Residuals Plot vs. Run order* shows the residuals for the run order and one response.

The residuals should be randomly distributed with no pattern. A pattern in the plot indicates a change in residuals over time. This could, for example, be the result when randomization errors exist in the experiment.

The illustration below shows a plot where the residuals are randomly distributed with no pattern.



Yield with Experiment Number labels

### **Interaction plot**

The *Interaction* plot shows if there is any interaction (i.e., when the effect of one factor depends on another factor) between two factors. The illustration below shows an example of an interaction plot. In this example there is an interaction between load mass (*LoMa*) and load conductivity (*LoCo*).



The table below describes how to interpret different interactions plot in a schematic way:

Plot	Description
	The two lines are parallel. This plot shows an example of no interac- tion between the two factors.
	The two lines are not parallel. This plot shows an example of inter- action between the two factors.
	The two lines are crossing. This plot shows an example of strong interaction between the two factors.

5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments

5.4.4 Analyze and evaluate the model - extended analysis

# Observed versus Predicted for each Response plot

The *Observed vs. Predicted for each Response (Y)* plot can be used to judge the quality of the model. With a good model all the points will fall on the 45° line (illustrated in the plot below).



# Main effects plot

The main effects plot displays the predicted response values when a factor varies from its low to its high level, all other factors in the design being set on their averages.



Main Effect for Load pH, resp. Yield

## ANOVA table

The ANOVA (analysis of variance) table gives a numerical presentation of the variance analysis.

The illustration below shows an example of the ANOVA table.

Recovery MassOut/MassIn	DF	SS	MS (variance)	F	р	SD
Total	10	79468.2	7946.82			
Constant	1	78570.5	78570.5			
Total Corrected	9	897.672	99.7413			9.98706
Regression	6	893.347	148.891	103.271	0.001	12.2021
Residual	3	4.32527	1.44176			1.20073
Lack of Fit	1	0.0786042	0.0786042	0.0370193	0.865	0.280364
(Model Error)						
Pure Error	2	4.24666	2.12333			1.45717
(Replicate Error)						
	N = 10	Q2 =	0.988	Cond. no. =	3.635	
	DF = 3	R2 =	0.995	Y-miss =	0	
		R2 Adj. =	0.986	RSD =	1.201	

5.4.4 Analyze and evaluate the model - extended analysis

When looking at the ANOVA table, the p-values for regression, Lack of Fit (model error) and condition number give important information about the model. The table below describes these values in more detail.

Value	Description	Interpretation
Regres- sion p- value	The regression p-value is a measure of the significance of the regression model.	p<0.05 indicates a significant regres- sion model.
Lack of Fit p-val- ue	The lack of fit p-value is a measure comparing the model error with the replicate error. This value is used in the calcu- lation of Model Validity in the Summary of Fit plot.	<ul> <li>p&gt;0.05 indicates a good model.</li> <li>If p&lt;0.05, this indicates that the model does not describe the relation between Y and X and that a quadratic term may be missing.</li> <li>See Section 5.4.5 Edit the model, on page 190 for information about how to add a quadratic term to the model.</li> <li>A low p-value may also be due to other reasons, for example terms missing or that there is no correlation between X and Y that can be modelled.</li> </ul>
Cond. no. (con- dition number)	The condition number can be used to investigate if the de- sign is appropriate to use, espe- cially if any of the default de- signs suggested in the <b>Method</b> <b>Editor</b> have been altered. Depending on the design, differ- ent condition numbers are ex- pected for the model to be good.	<ul> <li>When the objective is screening and robustness testing         <ul> <li>Good design when Cond. no.&lt;3</li> <li>Questionable design when Cond .no.=3-6</li> <li>Poor design when Cond. no.&gt;6</li> </ul> </li> <li>When the objective is optimization         <ul> <li>Good design when Cond. no.&lt;8</li> <li>Questionable design when Cond .no.=8-12</li> <li>Poor design when Cond. no.&gt;12</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## **Correlation matrix**

The correlation matrix gives a numerical presentation of the correlation between factors and responses and if the fit of the model is reasonable. The linear correlation coefficients R between all the terms in the model and all the responses are displayed in the correlation matrix.

Process factors are log-transformed, scaled, and centered and responses are log transformed. The value of the correlation coefficient R represents the extent of the linear association between two terms. The value of R ranges from -1 to 1. When R is near zero there is no linear relationship between the terms. Correlation coefficients above the threshold between a term in the model and the responses are colored green.

The illustration below shows an example of the correlation matrix.

	LoMa	LoCo	LopH	LoMa*LopH	LoCo*LopH	Yiel
LoMa	1	0	0	0	0	0,72118
LoCo	0	1	0	0	0	0,287094
LopH	0	0	1	0	0	-0,512175
LoMa*LopH	0	0	0	1	0	0,353699
LoCo*LopH	0	0	0	0	1	-0,0803863
Yiel	0,72118	0,287094	-0,512175	0,353699	-0,0803863	1

# 5.4.5 Edit the model

# Introduction

Editing of the model may be necessary after analysis of the model, if the current model does not give a good fit. In the analysis you may for example:

- find insignificant terms that need to be removed
- find that the model may have curvature and that a quadratic term needs to be added

The refined model can be analysed to see if it better fits the data.

This section describes how to edit the model.

## Edit the model

The table below describes how to edit a model:

#### Step Action

1

In the **Analysis** tab, click Edit Model...

Result: The Edit Model dialog opens.

Edit Model				X
Factors:			Model terms:	
Name	Abbr		Name	P-value
Load Mass	LoMa		Constant	0.00000
Load Conductivity	LoCo		LoMa	0.00002
Load pH	LopH	Add factor	LoCo	0.00060
			LopH	0.00006
		Add Interaction	LoMa*LoCo	0.66102
		Add Square	LoMa*LopH	0.00026
		Hdd oddaro	LoCo*LopH	0.05096
Use Ctrl or Ctrl+Shift and multiple factors when add Response and model of Select a response:	left mouse button to ling an interaction. coefficients	select	Remove	Reset
		R	2 Adi: 0.99 02:	0.96
				Cancel

Step	Action	
2	Note the model. S	<b>R2 Adj</b> and <b>Q2</b> values for the response(s) before starting to edit the elect different responses in the <b>Select a response</b> drop-down list.
	When ec indicate analysis,	liting the model, the <b>R2 Adj</b> and <b>Q2</b> values are updated. Higher values a better model. See also <i>Analyze and interpret the model - basic</i> <i>on page 174</i> for a description of the values.
3	Non-sigr example	nificant terms may have been found in the analysis of the model (for in the coefficient plot).
	To remo and clicł	ve a non-significant term, select the term in the <i>Model terms</i> table <i>Remove</i> . If the <i>P-value</i> >0.05, the term is not significant.
	Note:	Always remove non-significant terms from the model one by one, starting with the least significant interaction or quadratic term. When the first term has been removed, the significance of the other terms changes. The <b><i>P-value</i></b> can be used to determine which term to be removed next.
	Note:	If you fit a model to two or more responses, a model term that is not significant for one response may be significant for another response. Then the term should not be removed. Before removing a term, always check that the term is not significant for any of the other responses by selecting the response in the <b>Select a</b> <b>response</b> drop-down list and checking the <b>P-value</b> for the term you want to remove.
	Note:	If a main term is not significant but one of its interaction terms is significant the main term should not be removed.
	Note:	If a main term is removed its interaction terms are also removed.
	Result: T	he term is removed from the model and the <b>R2 Adi</b> and <b>O2</b> values

*Result*: The term is removed from the model and the *R2 Adj* and *Q2* values are updated. If the model refinement gives a higher *Q2* value, the model refinement is justified. If one model is fitted to several responses, view the *R2 Adj* and *Q2* values for all responses.

Step	Action	
4	Based on the	e previous analysis, add the appropriate terms to the model.
	<ul> <li>Add an ir tors tabl</li> <li>Tip:</li> </ul>	nteraction term by selecting the appropriate factors in the <i>Fac</i> - e and clicking <i>Add Interaction</i> . Use the <b>Ctrl</b> or <b>Shift</b> keyboard key when to select multiple factors.
	• Add a qu in the <b>Fa</b>	adratic term to the model by selecting the appropriate factor <b>ctors</b> table and clicking <b>Add Square</b> .
	Note:	Quadratic terms can be added if any of the plots in the analyses indicates that a quadratic term is missing (in the <b>Residuals vs. Variables</b> plot, for example).
	Note:	When you find curvature (i.e., a quadratic term needs to be added) in the model, the design for the experiment in the <b>DoE</b> setup should be changed to an extended Full Fractional (CCC or CCF) design. If the experimental setup is sufficiently stable the star point experiments alone can be added, otherwise it is recommended to rerun all experiments.
	<i>Result</i> : The te higher <b>R2 Ac</b> is fitted to se	erms are added to the model. If the model refinement gives <b>Ij</b> and <b>Q2</b> values, the model refinement is justified. If one model veral responses, view the <b>R2 Adj</b> and <b>Q2</b> values for all responses.
5	To return to	the original model settings, click <b>Reset</b> .
6	When you a	re satisfied with the editing, click <b>OK</b> .
	<i>Result:</i> The <b>E</b> showing the	<i>dit Model</i> dialog is closed and the <i>Analysis</i> tab displayed new plots for the edited model.
7	Perform an o Analyze and about how t	analysis of the edited model to see if the new model is <b>OK</b> . See <i>interpret the model - basic analysis, on page</i> 174 for information o analyze the model.

# 5.4.6 Use the model

### Introduction

When you have found a good model, use the model to draw conclusions and to decide if more experiments are needed and what experiments to perform. The following plots and tools can be used in the evaluation:

### Response surface plot

Generate a response surface plot to get a graphical representation of the experimental region. From this, the most interesting area can be used to plan new experiments, verifying experiments and to better understand the impact of large interactions between factors.

• Prediction

Use the predictor to predict response values for entered factor settings.

• Optimization

Use the optimizer to enter response and factor settings criteria and obtain suitable factor setting combinations for the set response criteria.

Note: Information about significant terms and how they influence the response values have already been found in the analysis of the model by looking at the coefficient plot, interaction plot, main effects plot and correlation matrix. See Analyze and interpret the model - basic analysis, on page 174 and Section 5.4.4 Analyze and evaluate the model - extended analysis, on page 182 for information about how to evaluate these plots.

This section describes how to use the model.

# Generate response surface plot and edit settings

The response surface plot graphically displays the experimental region. It is helpful when you want to:

- get an overview of how different factor settings affect the response
- find the interesting experimental area
- get help in deciding where to start a new investigation
- get help in deciding where to make verifying experiments
- understand the impact of large interactions

**Note:** The underlying model must be good and have a high Q<sup>2</sup>-value. See Section 5.4.3 Analyze and evaluate the model - basic analysis, on page 170.

1

The table below describes how to generate a response surface plot and how to evaluate the plot:

#### Step Action

In the **Analysis** tab, click Response Surface Plot...

Result: The Response Surface Plot dialog opens.



The *Contour Plot* shows a "map" of the model. The plot has a color scale from blue to red. For each color, the response value is displayed.

The factors selected are displayed on the *X* axis and *Y* axis in the *Contour Plot* (from *Low* to *High* as selected in the *Factors at the plot axes* area).

If you have more than two factors, the other factors will have constant values. The currently entered constant value(s) is displayed to the right of the contour plot. This means that this value is kept constant while the factors on the X- and Y-axes are varied.

The red area indicates the area where the response is maximized using the factor settings within this area and the current constant value(s).

### Action Step 2 It is possible to change the factors and their corresponding settings for the response surface plot as well as the constant values for the other factor(s). This is done per response if you have several responses. In this way you can see what happens if constant values are changed and if other factors and/or factor settings are set on the contour plot axes. This will help you to decide if/which complementary experiments need to be performed. For example, you may want to investigate which factor settings to use in new **DoE** setup to narrow down the area of interest. The coefficient plot can be used to see which terms have the greatest positive or negative effect on the response. This information can be tested by changing the contour plot settings and updating the plot. 3 To change the **Contour Plot** settings: Select the response for the contour plot in the *Response* drop-down list. Select factors for the X axis and Y axis and their corresponding ranges. • To return to the default values, click the **Reset default** button. Select or enter values for the Constant factors by choosing in the Settings drop-down list as shown in the diagram below. If selecting CUSTOM,

Factors	at the plot axes					Constant ractors			
		Lov	w: Hig	ph:		Factor	Value	Settings	
( axis:	Load Mass	~	75	300	Reset default	Load Conductivity	8.5	CENTER	~
axis:	Load pH	~	6	8	Reset default			LOW	

#### 4 Click the **Update Plot** button.

Result: The Contour Plot is updated.

click in the **Value** field and enter a value

5 When you have obtained the appropriate information to help you in the decision on how to proceed it is possible to print the *Contour Plot*.

- Click the *Print...* button.
   *Result:* The *Print Preview* dialog opens.
- Click *Print.... Result*: The standard *Print* dialog opens.
- Select the appropriate printer and click **Print**.

# **Predict response values**

It is possible to predict response values based on entered factor settings using the model. This is useful when you want to find out how detailed factor settings influence the response(s) in an optimization experiment. Factor settings are entered and response values are calculated when using the *Prediction* list.

The table below describes how to use the *Prediction* list:

#### Step Action

#### 1 Select the **Prediction** tab in the **Design of Experiments** box.

*Result*: The *Prediction* list opens.

Design of Experiments - Ca	pto adhere* (Read-Only)				Ψ×
Experiment Analysis Pre	ediction Optimization				
Prediction					
Load Mass	Load Conductivity	Load pH	Yield	Lower	Jpper
Predict Delet	e row				

- 2 Enter the appropriate settings for the different factors in their respective fields.
- 3 Click the **Predict** button.

*Result:* The response value is calculated and displayed in the *Yield* field, together with the *Lower* and *Upper* confidence limits. The larger the confidence interval, the more uncertain the calculation is.

Prediction

Load Mass	Load Conductivity	Load pH	Yield	Lower	Upper
250	15	6.1	97.80096	95.99249	99.60944
Predict Delete row	]				

Step	Action					
4	To enter othe click <b>Predict</b> . for different f Prediction	r factor settings, en In this way it is pos actor settings.	ter the settings sible to compo	s in the empty are different i	y row b respon	elow and se values
	Load Mass	Load Conductivity	Load pH	Yield	Lower	Upper
	250	15	6.1	97.80096	95.99249	99.60944
	300	15	6	99.94317	97.65833	102.228
	Predict De	lete row				

Repeat this procedure until you are satisfied.

# Optimize response values and factor settings

1

It is possible to optimize the response values using the optimizer. When using the optimizer, criteria for the response values and factor settings are entered (e.g., **Yield**>90%) and factor settings are calculated. In this way, the experimental region can be moved to an optimum.

The table below describes how to use the optimizer:

#### Step Action

Select the **Optimization** tab in the **Design of Experiments** box.

Result: The Optimization Criteria and Result tables are displayed.

						Responses						
1	Role		Value	Low	High	Response	Criteria		Weight	Mn	Target	Max
	Constant		200	vaue	value	Yield	Maximize	٣	1	90	95	
	Ene		630	6	9	Aggregate Content	Minimize	*	1		0.2	0.4
etive I	Fitee			2	15							
( F Etivity F	Constant Free Free	5 2 3	290	6	0 15	Aggregate Content	Minimize	(C) (S)	1		0.2	0.4

### 5 Design of Experiments 5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments 5.4.6 Use the model

Step	Action									
2	In the <b>Respor</b>	<b>ises</b> area	, select	t the <b>C</b>	riteri	<b>a</b> for t	he res	sponse	•	
	Responses Response	Criteria	Weight	Min	Target	Max				
	Yield	Maximize 🗸	1	90	95					

The following choices are available:

Minimize Maximize Target Exclude

• Minimize

The response value should be minimized. Enter **Target** value and **Max** value for the response.

• Maximize

The response value should be maximized. Enter *Target* value and *Min* value for the response.

• Target

The response value should be optimized to reach the **Target** value. Enter **Min**, **Target** and **Max** values for the response.

• Exclude

The response should not be included in the optimization (if you have several responses)

Result: The entered values are displayed.

Responses

Response	Criteria		Weight	Min	Target	Max
Yield	Maximize	~	1	90	95	

### Step Action

3

4

In the *Factors* area, select *Role* and settings for each factor:

actors					
Factor	Role		Value	Low Value	High value
Load Mass	Free	*		100	300
Load Conductivity	Constant	~	15		
Load pH	Free	~		6	7.5

- If the role *Free* is selected, the factor settings to be calculated for the response can have values within the entered *Low Value* and *High value* range. Enter the *Low Value* and *High value* as appropriate (to get an idea of the new region of interest, use the response surface plot).
- If the role *Constant* is selected, the factor setting is constant. Enter the factor value in the *Value* field.
- In the **Result** area, click the **Calculate Optimal Settings** button.

Result: The results are displayed in the Experiment table.

Besult					
Experiment	Calculate Optima	I Settings	Clear	)	Factor Response
Load Mass	Load Conductivity	Load pH	Yield	Iter	Log(D)
140	15	6	94.4676	0	-1.9455
300	15	6	99.9432	0	-10
299.975	15	6.0004	99.9412	80	-10
300	15	7.5	96.0432	0	-10
240	15	6.75	94.3998	0	-1.8414
200	15	6	96.521	0	-10
300	15	6	99.9432	0	-10
300	15	6	99.9432	0	-10

It is possible to see the combination factor settings that will give a certain response. The number of iterations for optimization is indicated in the *Iter* column. Lower (or more negative) *Log(D)* values (the logarithm of the distance to the target) indicate better results.

5 Design of Experiments5.4 Evaluation of Design of Experiments5.4.7 Create and print reports

# 5.4.7 Create and print reports

### Introduction

This section describes how to create basic and extended reports and how to print the reports.

### Create a report

The table below describes how to create a report:



*Result*: The *Report* dialog opens displaying the *Basic* report by default. It displays the Replicate, Summary of Fit, Normal probability and Coefficient plots.



#### Step Action

2 To display the extended report select the *Extended Report* radio button.

O Basic Report 💿 Extended Report

*Result:* The *Extended Report* opens in the *Report* dialog. This report includes all available plots as well as the experiment setup, objective and design used in the experiment.

			Exter	ded R	eport			
			Experimen	t name: Caj	oto adhere			
			Use	r name: De	fault			
	С	urrent date & tir	me: 6/3/2009	11:06:29 Al	vl,W. Europ	e Stand	dard Time	
Introduction	and Ba	ckground	I					
Factors and R	esponse	5						
Factors								
The following table cor	ntains the fact	tors names, ab	breviation a	nd settings.				
Name	Abbr. Units	Туре	Use	Settings	Transform	Prec.	MLR Scale PLS Scale	
Load Mass	LoMa	Quantitative	Controlled	75 to 300	None	Free	Orthogonal Unit Varianc	e
Load Conductivity	LoCo	Quantitative	Controlled	2 to 15	None	Free	Orthogonal Unit Variance	e
Load pH	LopH	Quantitative	Controlled	6 to 8	None	Free	Orthogonal Unit Varianc	e
Responses:								
Responses:								
Responses: The following table cor	ntains the res	ponses names	, abbreviatio	on and setti	ngs.			
Responses: The following table cor Name Abbr. Units T	ntains the res ransform ML	ponses names _R Scale PLS	, abbreviatio Scale T	on and setti	ngs.			
Responses: The following table con Name Abbr. Units T Yield Yiel N	ntains the res ransform ML one No	ponses names _R Scale PLS * one Unit	, abbreviatio Scale T Variance R	on and setti ype egular	ngs.			
Responses: The following table cor Name Abbr. Units T Yield Yiel N	ntains the res ransform ML one No	ponses names _R Scale PLS one Unit	, abbreviatio Scale T Variance R	on and setti ype egular	ngs.			
Responses: The following table cor Name Abbr. Units T Yield Yiel N <i>Objective</i>	ntains the res ransform ML one No	ponses names _R Scale PLS · one Unit	, abbreviatio Scale T Variance R	on and setti ype egular	ngs.			
Responses: The following table con Name Abbr, Units T Yield Yiel N <i>Objective</i> The objective determin	ntains the res ransform Mil one No nes the choic	ponses names _R Scale PLS one Unit e of the model	, abbreviatio Scale T Variance R and design.	on and setti ype egular The followi	ngs. na obiective	is are a	available:	

3

To view the information in the report use the vertical scrollbar.

# Print a report

The table below describes how to print a report:

Step	Action
1	In the Report dialog, click the <b>Print</b> button.
	Result: The <b>Print Preview</b> dialog opens.

Page 1 of Extended Report Experiment name: Capto adhere User name: Default Current date & time: 6/5/2009 226:00 PM/W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.	and the second se	Dena 1	- 4	12 - 2	A D	75%		Лн		
Page 1 of Extended Report Experiment name: Capto adhere User name: Default Current date & time: 6/5/2009 2:26:00 PM/W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.	an	raye		12 * *		1370				
Page 1 of Extended Report Experiment name: Capto adhere User name: Default Current date & time: 6/5/2009 2:26:00 PM,W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.										
Extended Report Experiment name: Capto adhere User name: Default Current date & time: 6/5/2009 2/26:00 PM,W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.									Pa	ge 1 of 12
Extended Report Experiment name: Capto adhere User name: Default Current date & time: 6/5/2009 2.26:00 PM.W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.										
Experiment name: Capto adhere User name: Default Current date & time: 6/5/2009 2/26:00 PM.W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.				E	xtended	Repo	rt			
User name: Defaulter User name: Default Current date & time: 6/5/2009 226:00 PM.W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.				Evener		Caraba and				
User name: Default Current date & time: 6/5/2009 2/26:00 PM/W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.				Cxper	iment name:	Capto ad	nere			
Current date & time: 6/5/2009 226:00 PM,W. Europe Standard Time Introduction and Background Factors and Responses Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.					User name:	Default				
Introduction and Background <i>Factors and Responses</i> Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.		Cur	rent da	ate & time: 6/5	v2009 2:26:0	O PM.W.	Europe Stand	dard Ti	me	
Introduction and Background <i>Factors and Responses</i> Factors The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.										
The following table contains the factors names, abbreviation and settings.		JDees	ากกระ	9 <i>5</i>						
	<i>Factors an</i> Factors	u Hesp								
Name Abbr. Units Type Use Settings Transform Prec. MLR Scale PLS Scale	<b>Factors and</b> Factors The following tal	ble conta	ins the	e factors name	es, abbreviati	on and se	ttings.			
Load Mass LoMa Quantitative Controlled 75 to None Free Orthogonal Unit 300 Variar	Factors and Factors The following tal Name	ble conta Abbr.	ins the Units	e factors name Type	es, abbreviati Use	on and se Settings	ittings. Transform	Prec.	MLR Scale	PLS Scale
Load LoCo Quantitative Controlled 2 to 15 None Free Orthogonal Unit Conductivity	Factors and Factors The following tal Name Load Mass	ble conta Abbr. LoMa	ins the Units '	e factors name Type Quantitative	es, abbreviati Use Controlled	on and se Settings 75 to 300	atings. Transform None	Prec. Free	MLR Scale Orthogonal	PLS Scale Unit Variance
Load pH LopH Quantitative Controlled 6 to 8 None Free Orthogonal Unit	Factors and Factors The following tai Name Load Mass Load Conductivity	ble conta Abbr. LoMa	ins the Units	e factors nami Type Quantitative Quantitative	use Use Controlled	on and se Settings 75 to 300 2 to 15	atings. Transform None None	Prec. Free Free	MLR Scale Orthogonal Orthogonal	PLS Scale Unit Variance Unit Variance
Name         Abbr. Units Type         Use         Settings Transform         Prec.         MLR Scale         PLS Scale           Load Mass         LoMa         Quantitative Controlled 75 to 300         None         Free         Orthogonal Unit	Factors and	o Hesp								

2 Click the **Print...** button. *Result:* The standard **Print** dialog opens.

3 Select the appropriate printer and click the *Print* button. *Result:* The report is printed.

# 6 BufferPro

# About this chapter

This chapter describes how to create, edit and use buffer recipes created using the **BufferPro** tool in UNICORN. For information about how to prepare the system for using **BufferPro**, see ÄKTA avant and UNICORN User Manual.

# In this chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	See page
6.1 BufferPro - Overview	204
6.2 Create a method using BufferPro	206
6.3 Create and edit BufferPro recipes	207
6.4 Print a BufferPro recipe	216
6.5 Calculate buffer composition using BufferPro	219
6.6 Export and import BufferPro recipes	222
6.7 Predefined BufferPro recipes	226

# 6.1 BufferPro - Overview

# Introduction

This section gives an introduction to the *BufferPro* tool in UNICORN, and includes a brief overview of the *BufferPro* recipes that are predefined.

### What is BufferPro?

The **BufferPro** tool allows automatic mixing of buffers during a run. Four stock solutions are generally used in a recipe, the buffering agent, a titrant, a salt stock solution and water. **BufferPro** facilitates **Scouting** or **Design of Experiments** runs using pH as a variable.

**BufferPro** is optimized for use with anion or cation exchange chromatography, but can also be used with gel filtration where the salt concentration may also be used as a variable during **Scouting** or **Design of Experiements**.

Commonly used buffer systems have predefined recipes in UNICORN from which new recipes can easily be created. New or edited recipes may be stored as *personal* or *global* recipes.

UNICORN uses a robust algorithm to calculate pH ranges for optimal buffering taking into account the buffer type, concentration, temperature and ionic strength. Once an optimal buffer has been found, it is possible using **BufferPro** to calculate the buffer composition for the production of bulk-scale buffer solutions if required.

For details on	See
Scouting	Chapter 4 Scouting, on page 103
Design of Experiments	Chapter 5 Design of Experiments, on page 116

### Workflow

- If required, create a new *BufferPro* recipe.
   Tip: Generally the predefined recipes will be sufficient.
- Create a method including BufferPro.
- Save the method.

# pH ranges for predefined buffers

The following diagrams show the optimal pH ranges for buffers commonly used in anion and cation exchange chromatography. Recipes for these buffers are predefined in UNI-CORN.

### Anion exchange chromatography



### Cation exchange chromatography



# 6.2 Create a method using BufferPro

# Introduction

This section describes the how to use **BufferPro** recipes in a method. For details on how to edit methods see *Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25.* 

# Creating a BufferPro method

Step	Action					
1	In the <b>Me</b> matic bu	thod Settings phase of a method, select the Use BufferPro (auto- ffer preparation) option.				
	O Use manu Inlet	A A I Inlet B B1				
	💿 Use Buffe	rPro (automatic buffer preparation)				
	Reci	ipe Bicine 0-1M NaCl - (pH 7.7-8.7, PD)				
		BufferPro Properties				
	pН	8.0 [7.7 - 8.7] (recommended)				
	Con	0.050 M [0.030 - 0.050]				
	Note:	It is not necessary to have the <i>Enable pH monitoring</i> option checked. The output from the pH monitor is not used by the BufferPro algorithm.				
2	Select <b>Re</b> specified	<i>cipe</i> and enter <i>pH</i> and buffer concentration ( <i>Conc</i> ) within the range.				
	Note:	For broad pH range multi-component buffers the concentration is fixed. For further information see <i>Section 6.7 Predefined</i> <i>BufferPro recipes, on page 226.</i>				
	Note:	To obtain an even gradient, the gradient should run for at least 10 minutes, and the <i>Flow rate</i> should be not lower than 1 ml/min for ÄKTA avant 25 and 2 ml/min for ÄKTA avant 150.				
3	<b>Save</b> the	method.				

# 6.3 Create and edit BufferPro recipes

# Introduction

This section describes how to create, edit, rename and delete **BufferPro** recipes. Predefined recipes may not be overwritten, renamed or deleted. Edited recipes, including edited predefined recipes, can be saved as **global** or **personal** recipes. **Global** recipes are available for all users, **personal** recipes only for the current user.

**Note:** The predefined recipes can be used in the majority of cases. There is often no need to create a new recipe before creating a *BufferPro* method.

### In this section

This section contains the following sections:

Section	See page
6.3.1 Create and edit a BufferPro recipe	208
6.3.2 Rename a BufferPro recipe	212
6.3.3 Delete a BufferPro recipe	214

6 BufferPro6.3 Create and edit BufferPro recipes6.3.1 Create and edit a BufferPro recipe

# 6.3.1 Create and edit a BufferPro recipe

## **General considerations**

The concentration of the buffer stock will affect the pH range and the settable concentration range in the method. The pH range will in general increase with increasing buffer concentration and decrease when lowered.

The titrant and buffer agent concentrations should be the same, since there may otherwise not be sufficient titrant to reliably obtain the entire pH range. For recipes titrated with strong acid/base, the concentration range that can be achieved is 15-25% of the buffer stock concentration. For conjugate acid/base titrants the corresponding range is 25-50% of the buffer stock concentration.

The following table describes how to create a new recipe and how to edit existing recipes.

## Create/edit a recipe

The following table describes how to create or edit a BufferPro recipe:

	Ste	p Action
--	-----	----------



#### In the Method Editor, select Tools:BufferPro Recipes....

Too	ls
Ê,	Start Protocol
	Evaluation Procedures
<b>.</b>	Scouting
迩	Design of Experiments
đ	Column Handling Ctrl+L
Ğ4	BufferPro Recipes
9	Administration
<b>B</b>	System Control
	Evaluation
	Options
	Change Passwords

#### Step Action

2 To create a new recipe, click **New...** in the **BufferPro Recipe** dialog.

To edit an existing recipe, select the recipe to be edited from the list and click *Edit...*.

Note: The available recipes may be filtered by type (*All*, *Predefined*, *Global* or *Personal*) by using the *Show* drop-down list.

ferPro Recipes							
ecipes:							
how: All			~	Stock	: Solutions:		
Recipe name	pН	Туре	^	Inlet	Stock solutions	Concentration (M)	Substance
Acetate 0-1M NaCl	3.8 - 5.4	PD		Q1	Buffer substances	0.2000	Bicine
Acetate with HCI 0-1M NaCI	4.0 - 5.1	PD					
AIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl	5.8 - 8.9	PD	-				-
Bicine 0-1M NaCl	7.7 - 8.7	PD					
Bis-Tris 0-1M NaCl	6.0 - 7.1	PD					
Bis-Tris Propane U-TM NaLI	6.6 - 7.7	PD					
Larbonate U-TM NaLI	9.2 - 10.5	PD		-			
Carbonate with HLLU-IM NaLI	3.5 - 10.2	PD		Q2	Acid or Base	0.2000	NaOH
Dirate 0.1M NaCl	23.60	PD		Q3	Water		
Citrate with HCL0.1M NaCl	37.57	PD	-	04	Cab	4,0000	March
hievable ranges with recipe:				Desc	ription:		
				Folk	w the safety instruct	ions for each bulk che	mical when preparing the BufferPro stock
pH	7.7 - 8.7			solu	tions!		
Bicine 0	.0300 - 0.05	500 M	1	Bici	ne 0.2000M: 32.64g E	Bicine to prepare 1 litr	e (Mw=163.2)
				Nac	DH 0.2000M: Use amp	oule.	
				N/w/	1 4 000Mi 222 Parka	even and these (Marinet	
				Nav	1 4.000M: 235.09 t0	prepare 1 licre (mw=c	10.44)
				Note	e: Not recommended I	for AIEX.	
				1			
NaCl U	.0000 - 1.00	NU NU					
	(0 - 100	% B	)				
			6.1				
B New Edit.	Henami	ear		ete	Export	port Print	L'Explore Proportions Close

### 6 BufferPro

6.3 Create and edit BufferPro recipes

6.3.1 Create and edit a BufferPro recipe

3

4

#### Step Action

Select a **Buffer substance** from the drop-down list.

		Inlet	Stock solutions	Concentration (M)	Substance	
рН	7.7 - 8.7	Q1	Buffer substances	0.2000	Bicine	
Bicine	0.0300 - 0.0500 M				Bicine	
					Bis-Tris Base Bis-Tris Propane	
					di Sodium hydrogen phosphate	
					Dietnanolamine Ethanolamine	
		Q2	Acid or Base	0.2000	Glycine	
	Q3	Water		INCPES		
		Q4	Salt	4.0000	NaCl	
NaCl	0.0000 - 1.0000 M	Dece	inking (			

- **Note:** Up to five buffer substances may be included in the recipe for the **Q1** inlet. If more than one substance is used, the concentration of the final buffer in **BufferPro** will be fixed, and is then dependent on the concentration of the stock solutions.
- **Note:** To choose a conjugate acid-base pair as the buffer, select the base form as *Buffer substance* apart from phosphate where the acidic or basic form may be chosen. The conjugate acid or base will appear as an option in the *Acid or Base* drop-down list.

Select the concentration and edit the value.

Stock :	Stock Solutions:								
Inlet	Stock solutions	Concentration (M)	Substance						
Q1	Buffer substances	0.1000	Bicine 🗸						
			- 🗸						
Q2	Acid or Base	0.1000	NaOH 🗸						
Q3	Water								
Q4	Salt	4.0000	NaCl 🗸						

Step	Action							
5	Choose a titrant ( <b>Acid or Base</b> ) from the drop-down list and if required edit its <b>Concentration</b> .							
	Note:	The titrant and the stock solution should generally have the same concentration. This is set as default for <b>Acid or Base</b> concentration.						
6	Choose	a <b>Salt</b> from the drop-down list and edit its <b>Concentration</b> if required.						
	Note:	The salt concentration of the stock solution should be four times larger than the desired maximum salt concentration for the gradient.						

7 Enter a description of the buffer.

Description:	
Low concentration Bicine buffer recipe.	~
Bicine 0.1000M: 16.32g Bicine to prepare 1 litre (Mw=163.2)	
NaOH 0.1000M: Use ampule.	
NaCl 4.000M: 233.8g to prepare 1 litre (Mw=58.44)	
Note: Not recommended for AIEX.	
	~

**Note:** Although the description is optional, it is highly recommended to add the recipe details for future reference.

Select to save the edited recipe as **Global** or **Personal** and click **Save as...** or **Save**.

Global	💿 Personal

**Note:** Recipes can be changed from *Personal* to *Global* and vice versa by editing the recipe, changing the type then clicking on *Save*.

Result: The Save As dialog opens.

Enter a name and click **Save**.

Save As		X
Recipe	Bicine Low Conc	~
<b>(</b>	Save	Cancel

8

9

# 6.3.2 Rename a BufferPro recipe

# Introduction

The following table describes the steps for renaming a BufferPro recipe.Note:Predefined recipes (shown as PD in the Type column) can not be renamed.

### Rename a recipe

Step	Action	
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> , select <b>Tools:BufferPro Recipes</b> .	
	Tools         Start Protocol         Evaluation Procedures         Scouting         Design of Experiments         Column Handling         Column Handling         Column Handling	
	Administration System Control Evaluation Options Change Passwords	

### Step Action

2

In the **BufferPro Recipes** dialog, select the recipe to be renamed.

fferPro Recipes								le l
Recipes:								
Show: All			~	Stock	Solutions:			
Recipe name	pH	Туре	^	Inlet	Stock solutions	Concentration (M)	Substance	
Acetate 0-1M NaCl	3.8 - 5.4	PD		Q1	Buffer substances	0.4000	Bicine	
Acetate with HLI U-1M NaLI	4.0 - 5.1	PD					2	
Ricine 0.1M NaCl	0.0 · 0.3 77.87	PD						
Bicine High Conc	7.3 - 9.1	P						
Bicine Low Conc 🛛 🕅 🕅	11.7 - 12.0	P						
Bis-Tris 0-1M NaCl	6.0 - 7.1	PD		-				
Carbonate 0.1M NaCl	6.6 · 7.7	PD		Q2	Acid or Base	0.4000	NaOH	
Carbonate with HCI 0-1M NaCI	95-102	PD		Q3	Water			
CIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl	2.0 - 7.0	PD	~	Q4	Salt	4.0000	NaCl	
chievable ranges with regine:				Desc	intion:			
								~
pH	7.3 - 9.1							
Bicine 0	.0600 - 0.10	100 M						
No.cl 0	0000 - 1.00	100 M						
Naci	( 0 = 100	% B	1					
	( 0 .00	.0 0	/					×
		-						(
🕜 New Edit	Renam		Del	ete	Export Imp	ort Print	Explore Proportions	Close

Note: The available recipes may be filtered by type (*All*, *Predefined*, *Global* or *Personal*) by using the *Show* drop-down list.

3

Click *Rename* and enter the new name.

noorate mannere minnaer		1.00	
AIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl	5.8 - 8.9	PD	
Bicine 0-1M NaCl	7.7 - 8.7	PD	
Bicine High Cone	7.3 - 9.1	Р	
Bicine Low Conc 💷	11.7 - 12.0	Р	
Bis-Tris 0-1M NaCl	6.0 - 7.1	PD	
DIE TRE DECEMBER O 114 MILOI	CC 77	DD.	

# 6.3.3 Delete a BufferPro recipe

# Introduction

The following table describes the steps needed to delete a *BufferPro* recipe. **Note:** Predefined recipes (shown as *PD* in the *Type* column) can not be deleted.

# Delete a recipe

Step	Action	
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> , select <b>Tools:BufferPro Recipes</b>	
	Tools         Image: Start Protocol         Evaluation Procedures         Image: Scouting         Im	

### Step Action

2

In the BufferPro Recipes dialog, select the recipe to be deleted.

fferPro Recipes							
Recipes:							
Show: All			Stock Solutions:				
Recipe name	pН	Туре 🔼	Inlet	Stock solutions	Concentration (M)	Substance	
Acetate 0-1M NaCl	3.8 - 5.4	PD	Q1	Buffer substances	0.4000	Bicine	
Acetate with HLIU-IM NaLI AIFX-mix 0-1M NaCI	4.0 - 5.1	PD				-	
Bicine 0-1M NaCl	7.7 - 8.7	PD -					
Bicine High Conc	7.3 - 9.1	P					
Sicine Low Conc 45	11.7 - 12.0	P					
sis-Fris U-FM NaCi Sis-Tris Propane 0-1M NaCi	6.0 - 7.1	PD PD PD PD	02	1.11	0.4000		
Carbonate 0-1M NaCl	NaCl 9.2 · 10.5		92	Acid or Base	0.4000	NaUH	
Carbonate with HCI 0-1M NaCl 9	9.5 - 10.2		Ų3	Water			
CIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl	2.0 - 7.0	PD 🗸	Q4	Salt	4.0000	NaCl	
H	7.3 - 9.1		-	ipuon.			
3icine O	.0600 - 0.10	00 M	8				
VəCl 0	.0000 - 1.00 ( 0 - 100	100 M % B)					
New Edit	Rename	e Dek	ete	Export Imp	iort Print	Explore Proportions	Close

Note: The available recipes may be filtered by type (*All*, *Predefined*, *Global* or *Personal*) by using the *Show* drop-down list.

3 Click **Delete**. A dialog will appear asking you to confirm the deletion.

# 6.4 Print a BufferPro recipe

# Introduction

This section describes how to print a BufferPro recipe from UNICORN. A recipe can be printed from the *Phase Properties* tab in *Method Editor*, or from the *BufferPro Recipes* dialog.

It is also possible to include the **BufferPro** recipes when printing the whole method. See Section 3.7 Print a method, on page 79.

# **Printing from Method Editor**

The following table describes how to print a recipe from the *Phase Properties* tab in *Method Editor*.

Step	Action							
1	In the <i>Phase Properties</i> tab in the <i>Method Editor</i> , click the <i>BufferPro Properties</i> button.							
	Recipe CIEX-mix 0-1M NaCI - (pH 2-7, PD)							
	BufferPro Progeties							
	pH 4.5 [2.0 - 7.0] (recommended)							
	Conc Defined by recipe for multicomponent buffers							
2	In the <b>BufferPro Properties</b> dialog click the <b>Print</b> button.							
	<i>Result</i> : The <i>Print</i> dialog opens.							
3	Choose a printer from the drop-down list in the <b>Print</b> dialog and click <b>OK</b> .							
# Printing from *BufferPro Recipes* dialog

The following table describes how to print a recipe from the **BufferPro Recipes** dialog.



2

Choose the recipe to be printed from the list in the **BufferPro Recipes** dialog.

BufferPro Recipes								
Recipes: Show: All			~	Stock	Solutions:			
Recipe name	рH	Туре	^	Inlet	Stock solutions	Concentration (M)	Substance	
Acetate 0-1M NaCl Acetate with HCI 0-1M NaCl	3.8-5.4	PD PD	]	Q1	Buffer substances	0.4000	Bicine	
AIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl Rigina 0.1M NaCl	5.8 - 8.9	PD					-	
Bicine High Conc	7.3 9.1	P						
Bis-Tris 0-1M NaCl	6.0 - 7.1	PD						
Bis-Tris Propane 0-1M NaCl Carbonate 0-1M NaCl	6.6 · 7.7 9.2 · 10.5	PD PD		Q2	Acid or Base	0.4000	NaOH	
Carbonate with HCI 0-1M NaCI CIEX-mix 0-1M NaCI	9.5 - 10.2	PD PD		Q3	Water	4 0000	M-Cl	
Achievable ranges with recipe:		- 12		Desci	intion:	1.0000	indici -	
	73 - 91				poort			~
Birine 0	0600 - 0.10	00 1						
URING U	.0000 - 0.10	00 1						
NaCl 0	.0000 - 1.00	100 N	1					
	(0 - 100 % B)							
New. Edit.	Benam	กัก	Dele	te	Export. Imp	ort Print	Explore Proportions	Close
			- 04					

3

Click the **Print...** button.

Result: The Print dialog opens.

Step	Action
4	Choose a printer from the drop-down list in the <b>Print</b> dialog and click <b>OK</b> .

### 6.5 Calculate buffer composition using BufferPro

#### Introduction

This section describes how to calculate an exact buffer composition for a buffer previously optimized using **BufferPro**. This is desirable when scaling up a purification procedure in order to prepare bulk-scale buffer solutions, for example ion exchange A and B buffers.

#### Calculating buffer composition

The following table describes the steps needed to calculate the buffer composition of a *BufferPro* recipe at a particular pH, buffer and gradient concentration, and temperature. In the examples shown in the table, a pH optimization scouting run has been performed. The buffer at which optimal separation was obtained was 50 mM HEPES, pH 7.8 at 25 °C, and the required peak eluted at 25% of the gradient.

Step	Action		
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> , se	lect Tools:BufferPro Recipes	
	Start Protocol Evaluation Procedures		
	Scouting           Design of Experiments		
	Column Handling Ctrl+L		
	Administration       System Control       Evaluation	=	
	Options Change Passwords	-	

### 6 BufferPro6.5 Calculate buffer composition using BufferPro

#### Step Action

2

Choose the appropriate recipe from the list in the **BufferPro Recipes** dialog.

IfferPro Recipes							
Recipes:							
Show: All			~	Stock	Solutions:		
Recipe name	pH	Туре	^	Inlet	Stock solutions	Concentration (M)	Substance
Citrate 0-1M NaCl	2.3 - 6.0	PD		Q1	Buffer substances	0.2000	HEPES
Citrate with HCI 0-1M NaCI Diethanolamine 0-1M NaCI	3.7 - 5.7	PD					-
Ethanolamine 0-1M NaCl	9.2 - 10.2	PD					
Formate 0-1M NaCl	2.6 - 4.4	PD					
Formate with HCI 0-1M NaCl	1.8 - 4.1	PD	0				
MES 0-1M NaCI	5.6 - 6.7	PD		02	Acid or Pace	0.2000	NEOH
Methylpiperazine 0-1M NaCl	4.6 - 5.3	PD		03	Acid of base	0.2000	Naon
MOPS 0-1M NaCl	6.5 - 7.6	PD		0.5	water		loss.
Phosphate 0-1M Naci	0.3 - 7.2	<u>F</u> U	~	Q4	Salt	4.0000	NaCl
pH	6.9 - 8.1	*		Follo	w the safety instruct	ions for each bulk che	emical when preparing the BufferPro stock
HEPES 0.	.0300 - 0.0	500 M		solutions! HEPES 0.2000H: 47.66g to prepare 1 litre (Mw=238.3) NaCH 0.2000H: Use ampule. NaCH 4.000H: 233.8g to prepare 1 litre (Mw=58.44) Note: Not recommended for AIEX. Useful down to about UV 230mm.			
NaCl 0.	.0000 - 1.0 ( 0 - 100	000 M %B	)				8
New Edit	Renam	e [	Dele	te	Export	ort Print	Explore Proportions Close

3 Click the *Explore Proportions...* button.

#### Step Action

4

In the *Explore Proportions* dialog, enter the *pH*, *Buffer concentrations*, the desired *Gradient concentration* and *Temperature*.

Explore Proportions		
Recipe: HEPES 0-1M NaCl		
pH:	7.8	
Buffer concentrations:		
HEPES	0.0500 M	
Gradient concentration:	25.0 %B	
Temperature:	т 🖾 ∘С	
	Calculate	
Mixture concentrations:		
HEPES	м	
NaOH	м	
NaCl	м	
0	Print Close	1

- **Note:** The *buffer concentrations* may not exceed the limits of the recipe. If this is the case the *Calculate* button will be grayed out.
- 5 Click **Calculate**.
  - **Note:** If the *pH* given is beyond the optimal buffering range of the buffer recipe, a warning will be displayed.
- 6 The actual concentrations of the components in the required buffer will be displayed.

Mixture concentrations:		
HEPES	0.0500	м
NaOH	0.0331	м
NaCl	0.2500	м
0	Print Close	

- **Note:** It is important that the molar amounts are as exact as possible when mixing the buffers. It has been found that four decimal places in molar concentration gives reproducible results.
- 7 The buffer composition can be printed by pressing the **Print...** button.

### 6.6 Export and import BufferPro recipes

#### Introduction

**BufferPro** recipes are stored internally in the UNICORN database. It is possible to export these recipes to a zip file on the local computer so that the recipe can be imported again later into the same database installation, or imported into another. This section describes how to export and import **BufferPro** recipes.

#### **Exporting BufferPro recipes**

The following table illustrates the steps required to export one or several recipes. **Note:** Predefined recipes can not be exported, since these recipes will always be found in a UNICORN installation.

#### Stage Description

1 In the *Method Editor*, select *Tools:BufferPro Recipes...*.



#### Stage Description

2	
_	
_	

Choose the recipe to be exported from the list in the **BufferPro Recipes** dialog.

fferPro Recipes								
ecipes:								
how: All			~	Stock	Solutions:			
Recipe name	pН	Туре	^	Inlet	Stock solutions	Concentration (M)	Substance	
Acetate 0-1M NaCl	3.8 - 5.4	PD		Q1	Buffer substances	0.4000	Bicine	
Acetate with HUI U-1M NaU	4.U - 5.1 E 0 0 0	PD					-	
Bicine 0-1M NaCl	7.7 - 8.7	PD	_					
Bicine High Conc	7.3 - 9.1	P						
Bicine Low Conc K	11.7 - 12.0	P						
Bis-Tris U-1M NaCl	6.0 - 7.1	PD		-				
Carbonate 0-1M NaCl	92-105	PD		ŲZ	Acid or Base	0.4000	NaOH	
Carbonate with HCI 0-1M NaCI	9.5 - 10.2	PD		Q3	Water			
CIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl	2.0 - 7.0	PD	~	Q4	Salt	4.0000	NaCl	
chievable ranges with recipe:				Desci	iption:			
pH	7.3 - 9.1							~
Bicine 0	.0600 - 0.10	00 M	2					
			-					
	0000 1.00							
Naci	.0000 - 1.00	N UU						
	(0 - 100	% B	,					~
	1977	-	_					
New Edit	Benam		Del	ete	Export Imn	ort Print	Explore Proportions	Class

- **Note:** Several recipes may be exported to the same zip file. To select a continuous range, click on the first recipe then Shift-click the last. To add single recipes to a selection, Ctrl-click them.
- 3 Click Export....

Result: The *Export* dialog opens.

- 4 Choose a location on the computer disk and a filename for the zip file.
- 5 Save the file.

### Importing BufferPro recipes

The following table illustrates the steps required to import one or several recipes.

Stage D	escription
---------	------------

1

In the Method Editor, select Tools:BufferPro Recipes....



Result: The BufferPro Recipes dialog opens.

nowr All			~	Stock	Solutione:		
Residences	-0	Turne	~	Inlat	Stock colutions	Concentration (M)	Substance
necipe name	20 54	T ype		01	Buffer substances	Concentration (in)	Subscalice
Acetate with MCI 0.1M NaCl	3.0 · J.4 40.51	PD	1	Q1	burrer substances	0.4000	Bicine
AIEX-mix 0.1M NaCl	58.89	PD					2
Bicine (I-1M NaCl	77.87	PD					
Bicine High Conc N	7.3 9.1	P					
Bicine Low Conc 🛛 😽	11.7 - 12.0	P					
Bis-Tris 0-1M NaCl	6.0 - 7.1	PD					
Bis-Tris Propane 0-1M NaCl	6.6 - 7.7	PD		Q2	Acid or Base	0.4000	NaOH
Carbonate 0-1M NaCl	9.2 - 10.5	PD		03		011000	
Carbonate with HCI 0-1M NaCI	9.5 - 10.2	PD		0.5	water		
CIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl	2.0 - 7.0	PD	~	Q4	Salt	4.0000	NaCl
pH	7.3 - 9.1						
Bicine C	1.0600 - 0.10	000 N	1				
NaCl C	1.0000 - 1.00 ( 0 - 100	100 N % F	1	6			

2 Click on the *Import...* button. *Result*: The Import dialog opens.

#### Stage Description

3 Browse to the zip file containing the *BufferPro* recipe(s) on the computer disk and *Open* the file.

Result: The Import BufferPro Recipes dialog opens.



- 4 In the *Import BufferPro Recipes* dialog, uncheck any recipe(s) that you do not wish to import. Select whether the recipe(s) should be imported as *global*, otherwise they will be imported as *personal* recipes.
- 5 Click **OK** to import the recipe(s).

### 6.7 Predefined BufferPro recipes

#### Introduction

This section describes in detail the predefined buffer systems in *BufferPro* that are delivered with UNICORN.

#### **General points**

The following points should be taken into consideration:

- The pKa of certain buffer substances can vary significantly with temperature. This means that the working pH range for optimal buffering will vary with temperature. It is possible to estimate the appropriate pH ranges using the *Explore Proportions* tool, see *Section 6.5 Calculate buffer composition using BufferPro, on page 219*.
- The two broad-range buffer systems, *AIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl* and *CIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl* may only be used at fixed concentration, since these are multi-component buffers.
- The working concentration for buffers that are mixed using conjugate acid-base pairs is 25-50% of the stock solution concentration. For buffers mixed using strong acid or base solutions the working concentration is 15-25% of the stock solution concentration. Although it may be possible to mix solutions outside this range, UNI-CORN will show a warning since the pH of the resulting buffer may not be reliable. If in doubt, check the pH of the eluent after running an experiment using a reliable lab pH meter.
- The pH range given is based on the narrowest range for effective buffering for the entire gradient (0-1M NaCl). The ionic strength of the mixed solution affects the apparent pKa of the buffering agent. For pH outside the recommended range the buffering capacity is unreliable and should be avoided. UNICORN will display a warning in case either the required concentrations or pH will not provide adequate buffering. If in doubt, check the pH of the eluent after running an experiment using a reliable lab pH meter.
- Certain buffer substances are not recommended for anion exchange and others not for cation exchange. For example, phosphate buffers are not suitable for anion exchange. Buffer suitability is noted in the predefined recipes in UNICORN.

# pH and concentration ranges for predefined recipes

The following table gives the optimal pH and concentration ranges for buffer recipes that are predefined in **BufferPro** at 25  $^{\circ}$ C.

Buffer system	pH range at 25 °C	Concentration range (M)	Comment
AIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl	рН 5.8-8.9	Fixed at 25% of the concentra- tion of the stock solution.	Broad range buffer sys- tem for Anion exchange chromatography.
CIEX-mix 0-1M NaCl	рН 2.0-7.0	Fixed at 25% of the concentra- tion of the stock solution.	Broad range buffer sys- tem for Cation ex- change chromatogra- phy.
Acetate 0-1M NaCl	pH 3.8-5.4	0.05 - 0.1	Titrated with conjugate acid
Acetate with HCl 0- 1M NaCl	рН 4.0-5.1	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Bicine 0-1M NaCl	рН 7.7-8.7	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong base
Bis-Tris 0-1M NaCl	рН 6.0-7.1	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Bis-Tris Propane 0-1M NaCl	рН 6.6-7.7	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Carbonate 0-1M NaCl	рН 9.2-10.5	0.05 - 0.1	Titrated with conjugate acid
Carbonate with HCl 0-1M NaCl	рН 9.5-10.2	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Citrate 0-1M NaCl	рН 2.3-6.0	0.05 - 0.1	Titrated with conjugate acid
Citrate with HCl 0-1M NaCl	рН 3.7-5.7	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Diethanolamine 0-1M NaCl	рН 8.6-9.7	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Ethanolamine 0-1M NaCl	рН 9.2-10.2	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid

### 6 BufferPro6.7 Predefined BufferPro recipes

Buffer system	pH range at 25 °C	Concentration range (M)	Comment
Formate 0-1M NaCl	рН 2.6-4.4	0.05 - 0.1	Titrated with conjugate acid
Formate with HCl 0- 1M NaCl	рН 1.8-4.1	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
HEPES 0-1M NaCl	рН 6.9-8.1	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong base
MES 0-1M NaCl	рН 5.6-7.0	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong base
Methylpiperazine 0- 1M NaCl	рН 4.6-5.3	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
MOPS 0-1M NaCl	рН 6.5-7.6	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong base
Phosphate 0-1M NaCl	рН 5.9-7.2	0.05 - 0.1	Titrated with conjugate acid
Phosphate with HCl 0-1M NaCl	рН 6.2-6.9	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Piperazine 0-1M NaCl, low pH	рН 5.5-6.4	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Piperazine 0-1M NaCl, high pH	рН 9.3-10.5	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong base
Succinic Acid 0-1M NaCl	рН 3.4-5.6	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong base
Triethanolamine 0-1M NaCl	рН 7.4-8.4	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid
Tris 0-1M NaCl	рН 7.6-8.7	0.03 - 0.05	Titrated with strong acid

### 7 Method queues

### Introduction

This chapter describes how to create and edit method queues in UNICORN. For information on how to create and edit individual methods, see *Chapter 3 Create and edit methods*, *on page 25*.

#### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

See page
230
231
235

### 7.1 Method queues - overview

### Introduction

A method queue in UNICORN is a linked set of methods to be run. The method queue can contain methods to be run on up to three different systems. Each system may have up to ten methods queued.

For example, a method queue might be useful on a single system when a wash procedure is programmed in a separate method. This method can then be linked to a series of different process methods ensuring the same wash procedure is used in each process. On multiple systems, the product of a separation on the first system might be the starting material for a separation on the next, allowing fully automatic multi-step processing.

**Note:** When a method queue is started, an option is available to run the start protocol for the method queue only once. Notification limit warnings related to the number of times a column has been used, for example since the last CIP was performed, are only issued when the start protocol is performed. See *Set notification limits for an individual column, on page 269.* In a method queue this may therefore not always be shown exactly when the notification limit is reached. Each run will however be noted in the column history, which should be checked before critical runs in a method queue. See *View individual column history, on page 274.* 

# Main steps when creating a method queue

The main steps when creating a method queue are:

Step	Action		
1	Create methods for the required system(s). See Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25.		
2	Create/open a method queue		
	Create a new method queue		
	Or		
	Open an existing method queue that can be edited and saved with a new name		
3	Save the method queue		

### 7.2 Create a method queue

#### Creating a method queue

2

The following table describes how to create a method queue.

Step	Action
1	In the <i>Method Editor</i> :
	click the <i>New Method Queue</i> icon in the <i>Toolbar</i>
	or
	Select File:New Method Queue
	File Edit View Phases Tools



Result: The Method Queue dialog opens.

In the *Method Queue* dialog, choose the *Number of included systems* from the drop down list.

Wethod Queue			
Number of included systems: 1 System 2	·		Move Up
Method         3           1         -           2         -           3         -           4         -		Start Condition	Move Down Inset Row Delete
<b>D</b>		Save 3 Save As	Close

*Result*: A separate method queue block will be added to the dialog for each additional system if required.

Step	Action
3	Choose a system for each method queue block from the <b>System</b> drop down list.

Syste	n	*
	NP2.9-01	~
1	P2.9-04	
2	P2.9-08 P2.9-09	=
3	P2.9-10	
4	P2.9-11  P2.9-12	~

4 Choose a *Method* to add to a method queue by pressing the browse button.

Syst	tem P2.9-01	*
	Method	
1		

Result: The **Select Method** dialog opens.

5 In the *Select Method* dialog, browse to the required method and click *OK*. *Result*: The method is added to the method queue.

**Note:** For reasons of system compatability, the individual methods should be saved for the system on which they are queued.

<ul> <li>6 Select a Start Condition for the method from the drop-down list.</li> <li>Note: The first Method for the first System will always have its Start Condition set to At queue start.</li> <li>Available Start Conditions are:</li> <li>At queue start</li> <li>The method will begin at the start of the method queue. Only available for the first method for each system.</li> <li>Immediately after the previous method has ended</li> <li>The method will start when the previous has ended on the queue for that system.</li> <li>Wait</li> <li>The method will start after a specified Wait time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the Wait time can be specified in Hours and Minutes. The delay time will be shown in the Method Queue dialog once entered.</li> <li>At ready command</li> <li>The method will start when a Ready instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the System and Method can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.</li> </ul>	Step	Action
<ul> <li>Available Start Conditions are:</li> <li>At queue start The method will begin at the start of the method queue. Only available for the first method for each system. </li> <li>Immediately after the previous method has ended The method will start when the previous has ended on the queue for that system. </li> <li>Wait The method will start after a specified Wait time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the Wait time can be specified in Hours and Minutes. The delay time will be shown in the Method Queue dialog once entered. A tready command The method will start when a Ready instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the System and Method can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram. With With With With With With With With</li></ul>	6	Select a <i>Start Condition</i> for the method from the drop-down list. Note: The first <i>Method</i> for the first <i>System</i> will always have its <i>Start</i> <i>Condition</i> set to <i>At queue start</i> .
<ul> <li>At queue start The method will begin at the start of the method queue. Only available for the first method for each system. Immediately after the previous method has ended The method will start when the previous has ended on the queue for that system. Wait The method will start after a specified Wait time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the Wait time can be specified in Hours and Minutes. The delay time will be shown in the Method Queue dialog once entered. A tready command The method will start when a Ready instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the System and Method can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram. Wind Queue System and Method can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.</li></ul>		Available Start Conditions are:
The method will begin at the start of the method queue. Only available for the first method for each system.  Immediately after the previous method has ended The method will start when the previous has ended on the queue for that system.  Wait The method will start ofter a specified Wait time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the Wait time can be specified in Hours and Minutes. The delay time will be shown in the Method Queue dialog once entered.  A tready command The method will start when a Ready instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the System and Method can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.		At queue start
<ul> <li>Immediately after the previous method has ended The method will start when the previous has ended on the queue for that system. </li> <li>Wait The method will start after a specified Wait time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the Wait time can be specified in Hours and Minutes. The delay time will be shown in the Method Queue dialog once entered. A tready command The method will start when a Ready instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the System and Method can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram. With a start with the connected methods, as shown in the diagram. With a start with a start with a sea start with a start with a sea start with a start with a start with a sea start with a</li></ul>		The method will begin at the start of the method queue. Only available for the first method for each system.
The method will start when the previous has ended on the queue for that system.  • Wait The method will start after a specified Wait time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the Wait time can be specified in Hours and Minutes. The delay time will be shown in the Method Queue dialog once entered.  • At ready command The method will start when a Ready instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the System and Method can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.		Immediately after the previous method has ended
<ul> <li>Wait         The method will start after a specified Wait time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the Wait time can be specified in Hours and Minutes. The delay time will be shown in the Method Queue dialog once entered.     </li> <li>At ready command         The method will start when a Ready instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the System and Method can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.     </li> </ul>		The method will start when the previous has ended on the queue for that system.
The method will start after a specified <i>Wait</i> time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the <i>Wait</i> time can be specified in <i>Hours</i> and <i>Minutes</i> . The delay time will be shown in the <i>Method Queue</i> dialog once entered. • At ready command The method will start when a <i>Ready</i> instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the <i>System</i> and <i>Method</i> can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.		• Wait
• At ready command The method will start when a <i>Ready</i> instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the <i>System</i> and <i>Method</i> can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram. Multiple of include system: <a href="https://www.willistart.condition">www.willistart.condition</a> (as shown in the diagram.		The method will start after a specified <b>Wait</b> time has elapsed since the previous method in the queue for the system has ended. A separate dialog will open where the <b>Wait</b> time can be specified in <b>Hours</b> and <b>Minutes</b> . The delay time will be shown in the <b>Method Queue</b> dialog once entered.
The method will start when a <b>Ready</b> instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the <b>System</b> and <b>Method</b> can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.		At ready command
Method Queue - Ionf xchangeMethodQueue*       Image: Control of included systems:       Image: Control of included systems: <thimage: control="" inclu<="" of="" td=""><td></td><td>The method will start when a <b><i>Ready</i></b> instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the <b>System</b> and <b>Method</b> can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.</td></thimage:>		The method will start when a <b><i>Ready</i></b> instruction in a method on another system has been executed. Using this start condition it is possible to connect methods running on different systems. A separate dialog will open where the <b>System</b> and <b>Method</b> can be chosen. An arrow to the left of the method queues will show the connected methods, as shown in the diagram.
Number of included system: 2 V System: P2.9.01 V Method Stat: Condition 1 ColumVashPlocedue II Arguese stat 2 AnonExchangeMethod II Immediately after the previous method has ended V 4 IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII		Method Queue - IonExchangeMethodQueue*
		Number of included system: 2 V System (P2:9:01 V Stat Condition Method Stat Condition Interface and V Interf

7

Repeat steps 4 to 6 to add further methods to the *Method* list for each required system.

Step	Action	
8 Click <b>Save</b> or <b>Save As</b> to save the completed met		<i>e</i> or <b>Save As</b> to save the completed method queue.
	<b>Note:</b> An error dialog will be displayed if any of the methods of incompatible with the system on which they are queue	

### 7.3 Edit a method queue

#### Introduction

This section describes how to open, delete and edit existing method queues. Methods can be inserted and deleted from a method queue, and their order in the queue can be changed.

#### Opening a method queue

The table below describes how to open an existing method queue in the database:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Method Editor</b> :
	• Click the <b>Open Method Navigator</b> icon in the <b>Toolbar</b>



or

• select File:Open...



or

• select View:Method Navigator

v	
T	oolbar
Ν	1ethod Navigator
0	iradient <sup>KS</sup>
F	'hase Library
F	low Scheme
F	testore to Default
	V T Q F F F

Result: The Method Navigator is displayed.

Step	Action	
2	Select the method queue to	be opened in the <b>Folder name</b> column.
	Method Navigator	-= X
	Open 浩 🦨 Methods, Method Qi	• 🗐 •
	Folder name	System
	<ul> <li>HCE-DB1L14J\UNICORN\Unicom</li> <li>Call Adam</li> <li>AnionExchangeMethod</li> </ul>	Demo System
	🔁 ColumnWashMethod	Demo System Demo System
	DesaltWashAndAIEX	

- 3 To open the method queue,
  - Click the **Open** button located in the toolbar of the **Method Navigator**pane

or

• double-click the selected method queue

*Result:* The *Method Queue* dialog is opened with the details for the opened method queue.

**Note:** If a method contained in the method queue has been altered since the last time it was saved, an information dialog will be displayed.

#### Delete a method queue

The table below describes how to delete a method queue from the database:

Step	Action				
1	In the <i>Method Editor</i> :				
	Click the <b>Open Method Navigator</b> icon in the <b>Toolbar</b>				
	or				
	• select <i>File:Open</i>				

select File:Open...



```
or
```

• select View:Method Navigator



Result: The Method Navigator is displayed.



Select the method queue to be deleted in the *Folder name* column.



Step	Action
3	To delete the method queue,
	• select <i>Edit:Delete</i>
	or
	press the <b>Delete</b> key
	or
	<ul> <li>right-click the selected method queue and select <i>Delete</i> from the context menu.</li> </ul>
	Result: A dialog will appear asking to confirm the delete operation.

# Insert a method into a method queue

The following table describes how to insert a method into the *Method* list for a system.

Step	Action
1	Open the method queue, see Opening a method queue, on page 235.
	<i>Result</i> : The <i>Method Queue</i> dialog opens with the details for the chosen method queue.

2 In the *Method Queue* dialog, select the position in the list at which a method will be inserted by clicking on the *Method* column.

ber of included systems: 2			
System P2.9-01	v		Move U
Method		Start Condition	Move Do
1 ColumnWashProcedure		At queue start	
2 AnionExchangeMethod		Immediately after the previous method has ended	V Insert Bo
3			× Histerio
4			Delete
5			*
Sustem P2.9-04			
Method		Start Condition	
1 ColumnWashProcedure2		At queue start	~
2 CationExchangeMethod	\$ 	At ready command	~
3			*
4			~
5			× ×

Step	Action	
3	Insert a new row by clickin <i>Result</i> : An empty row will b	g on the <b>Insert Row</b> button. le inserted.
	System P2 9-04 Method 1 ColumrWashProcedure2 2 3 CationExchangeMethod 4	Start Condition
4	Add a <b>Method</b> and <b>Start Co</b> a method queue, on page 2	ondition to the Method list. See Section 7.2 Create 231.

5 Save the method queue.

# Delete a method from a method queue

The following table describes how to delete a method from the method queue for a system.

Step	Action
1	Open the Method Queue, see Opening a method queue, on page 235.
	<i>Result</i> : The <i>Method Queue</i> dialog opens with the details for the chosen method queue.

2 In the *Method Queue* dialog, select the method to be removed by clicking on its name in the *Method* list.

Sys	tem P2.9-01	~		^	Move Up
	Method		Start Condition		Maus Day
1	ColumnWashProcedure		At queue start		MOVE DU
2	AnionExchangeMethod		Immediately after the previous method has ended		Insert Ro
3					Insectio
4					Delete
5			)		
Sys	tem P2.9-04	~			
-	Method		Start Condition		
1	ColumnWashProcedure2		At queue start		
2	DesaltingMethod 🚱	m	At ready command		
3	CationExchangeMethod		Wait 0h 20min after the previous method has ended		
4					
5			\ \		

Step	Action
3	Delete the selected row by clicking on the <i>Delete</i> button.
	Result: The method will be deleted from the method queue.
4	Save the method queue.

# Change order of methods in a method queue

The following table describes how to change the order of methods in an existing method queue.

Step	Action
1	Open the method queue, see Opening a method queue, on page 235.
	<i>Result</i> : The <i>Method Queue</i> dialog opens with the details for the chosen method queue.

2 In the *Method Queue* dialog, select a method to be moved by clicking on its name in the *Method* list.

Syst	em P2.9-01	*		~	Move
	Method		Start Condition		MoveD
1	ColumnWashProcedure		At queue start		Linove D
2	AnionExchangeMethod		Immediately after the previous method has ended	~	Insert F
3				~	Insert
4				~	Dele
5				~	
Syst	em P2.9-04	*			
-	Method		Start Condition		
1	ColumnWashProcedure2		At queue start	~	
2	DesaltingMethod 🕼		At ready command	~	
3	CationExchangeMethod		Wait 0h 20min after the previous method has ended	~	
		_			

3 To move the selected method up in the *Method* list, click the *Move Up* button.

or

To move the selected method down in the **Method** list, click the **Move Down** button.

- 4 To change the order of further methods, repeat steps 2 and 3.
- 5 Save the method queue.

## 8 Column Handling

#### Introduction

The **Column Handling** tool in UNICORN enables handling of column types and, if selected during installation, handling of individual columns using the **Column Logbook**. The **Column Handling** tool can be opened from all available modules in UNICORN.

This chapter gives an overview of the Column Handling and Column Logbook tools.

#### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following sections:

Section	See page
8.1 Overview	242
8.2 Handling column types	247
8.3 Handling individual columns	260
8.4 Column performance	276
8.5 Intelligent Packing of AxiChrom™ columns	279

### 8.1 Overview

#### Introduction

This section gives an overview of the **Column Handling** tool and suggests a workflow when working with column types and individual columns.

#### Definitions

Term	Description
Column type	A type of column consisting of a particular hardware and media
Column <i>or</i> Individual col- umn	An individual column of a column type

#### Example

A laboratory has two Mono Q<sup>™</sup> HR 16/10 columns used in different projects. Both columns are of column type Mono Q HR 16/10. However each individual column may be treated and logged separately using **Column Logbook** in UNICORN, assuming this option has been enabled during installation.

**Note:** When creating methods and performing method runs, the bed height for the *column type* will be used. If you wish to use the actual bed height of a custom packed column (e.g. an AxiChrom column), you must create a specific column type that is equal to the individual column, using the packed bed height.

# Open the Column Handling dialog

To open the **Column Handling** dialog:

- select Tools:Column Handling... in any of the UNICORN modules or
- click the Column Handling icon in the Toolbar where available

----

### Illustration of the Column Handling dialog

The illustration below shows the *Column Handling* dialog displaying the *Column Type Parameters* tab.

N	Name: HiLoad 16/10Q Sepharos	e HP (Predefined)				
access label:	Run Parameters:			Details:		
fined types	Parameters	Value	Unit	Parameters	Value	Unit
types, user created ( 1 )	Technique	Anion Exchange		Hardware diameter	1.6	cm
al types, user created	Column volume	20.106	ml	Bed height	10.0	cm
ies:	Max pre-column pressure	0.5	MPa	Typical loading range	200-1400	mg
en Capto DEAE 20 cm Transami 属	Max delta column pressure	0.3	MPa	Total liquid volume (Vt)	18.1	ml
0/300 10um SS MabSelect 20	Default flowrate	3.0	ml/min	Void volume (Vo)		ml
50_20 Capto DEAE Transamina:	Max flowrate	5.0	ml/min	Typical peak width at base	15.0	ml
0_20cm_CaptoMMC_insulin	Default linear flowrate	89.52	cm/h	Average particle diameter	34.0	μm
7 16/10 3,1 ml	Max linear flowrate	149.21	cm/h	Molecular weight range		Mr
3,5 ml	Min pH value (short term)	1		Ordering Information:		
5 ml	Max pH value (short term)	14		Parameters	Value	
P,1 mi P.5 mi	Min pH value (long term)	2		Name	Will and 16/10 0 Samh	woode UIP
/10 Phenyl Sepharose HP	Max pH value (long term)	12		Code number	17.1004.01	103611
/10 G Sepharose HP /10 SP Sepharose HP				the dama were a	O.Conkeyee Mink Ded	
/60 Superdex 30 pg				Median ridne	17.1014.01	oimance
/60 Superdex 200 pg /60 Superdex 75 pg				Medium code number	17-1014-01 VK 10/20	
/10 Phenyl Sepharose HP				Hardware name	AK 16/20	
/10 U Sepharose HP /10 SP Sepharose HP				Hardware code number	18-8773-01	

Part	Function
1	<i>Select Column Type</i> area: Shows the available column types in the <i>Column Handling</i> dialog. The list can be filtered to display column types for a specific technique and/or access label.
2	<b>Column Type Parameters</b> tab: Shows the parameters for the selected column type in the <b>Column types</b> list. See Section 8.2 Handling column types, on page 247 for more information.

Part	Function			
3	Column Logbool Shows available Column types lis list are shown in Handling individu	<b>k</b> tab: individual columns for the s t. The parameters for the sel the <b>Column Logbook</b> area t <i>ual columns, on page 260</i> for	elected column ty ected column in th to the right. See Se more information	pe in the e <b>Columns</b> ection 8.3 n.
	Celumn Handfing Select Dehman Type Select by technique Any Show by access label Prevent dehment year. Clabel types, use context Person by secure context	Colum Type Pleaneters Column Logitols Select Column To Colum Find by D Find by D Find by D Find by Column Find	] Cahan Lagbook:	2
	Hack 1000 Speeks 30 pc           Hack 1000 Speeks	Ales     T7 Active 1 Josef Active     To Active 1 Josef Active     To Active     To Active     To Active     Part. Econ. Incon.	Calam Date  Calam Date  Inter  Media: Bach ID  Mobile of una: Inter  Mac of data generals (PPa)  Noble of una: Inter  Masured text inter  Masu	Vala HP-sp CA IT 15/10 17/07.90 2015-05.11 2015-05.11 2015-05.11 0.00 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

#### Main Column Handling tasks

There are many possible workflows when working with column types and individual columns in UNICORN. The table below lists the main tasks that are performed in the *Column Handling* tool or the *Select columns dialog* in the *Start Protocol* (when starting the run in *System Control*).

When working with	the main tasks are
Column types	Create new column types
	Import/export column types
	- Used to transfer column type data between differ- ent databases
	Edit column types
	- Edit parameters and delete column types
	Print information about column types

When working with	the main tasks are
Individual columns	Register new columns
	- scan or manually type in the barcode
	<ul> <li>add notes (optional)</li> <li>Tip: New columns can be registered using the Column Handling dialog or before the run is started.</li> </ul>
	• Select columns to be used in the run
	- view column history (optional)
	- view performance report (optional)
	<ul> <li>scan column barcode</li> <li>Tip: Individual columns to be used for a specific run can only be selected via the Start Protocol. Before selecting a previously used column, it is possible to view the run history and a performance report (if available) in the Column Handling dialog.</li> </ul>
	• Edit columns
	- add/edit notes
	- set notification limits
	- delete unused columns
	Print column information
	Generate a performance report
	Export and import columns from UNICORN

#### 8 Column Handling 8.1 Overview

# Illustration of Column Handling workflow

The illustration below shows a possible workflow when working with column types and individual columns:



### 8.2 Handling column types

#### Introduction

When you create a new method and select a column type in the *Method Settings* phase, the volume, flow rate, and pressure limits are automatically set. Most of the work regarding handling of column types is performed in the *Method Editor*. The column type to be used in a method is selected when creating the method as shown in the illustration below.

Phase Properties	Text Instructions		
Method Settings			
Column selection		Res	sult Name & Location
Show by technic	que Anion Exchange		Start Protocol
Column type	HiLoad 16/10 Q Sepharose HP		Method Notes
Column volume	20.106 ml Column Properties		
Pressure limit pr	e-column 0.50 MPa (0.02 - 20.00)	- Unit selection	
Pressure limit de	elta-column 0.30 MPa (0.02 - 20.00)	Method Base Unit	
Use flow res	trictor	Flow Bate Unit	ml/min 👻
Column position Ru-pa	229		
		Monitor settings	
		Wavelengths [19	90 · 700] nm
Flow rate	2.500 ml/min [0.000 - 25.000]	UV 1	280 nm
Co	ontrol the flow to avoid overpressure	UV 2	254 nm
		UV 3	214 nm
💿 Use manually prepared	d buffers		
Inlet A A1	V Inlet B B1	🗹 Enable pH mo	nitoring

Column types are either globally available to all users, or only personally available. A number of column types are predefined in UNICORN (see below for more information about predefined column types).

**Note:** When creating methods and performing method runs, the bed height for the <u>column type</u> will be used. The measured bed height of a custom packed individual column (e.g an AxiChrom column) may differ from the bed height of the parental column type. If you wish to use the correct bed height for method creation, you can edit the column type and enter the measured bed height of the individual column.

This section describes how to add, edit and delete column types. It also describes how to import and export column types and how to print information about selected column types.

#### **Predefined column types**

A number of GE Healthcare column types are predefined in UNICORN. For each column type, as many individual columns as needed can be registered. Parameters for the predefined column types can be edited by saving the column type with a new name and as a **Personal** or **Global** column type. The complete list of predefined column types can be found in the **Column Handling** dialog.

#### Create a new column type

The table below describes how to add a new column type with the **Column Handling** tool:

#### Step Action

1

In the **Column Type Parameters** tab in the **Column Handling** dialog, click

Result: The New Column Type dialog opens.

	IU Any	
	72	
Healthcare hardware type	GE Healthcare med	fium type
ν <b>.</b>	<ul> <li>Any</li> </ul>	
un Promotore Distanta Contractor		
un Parameters Details Urdering	Information	
Parameters	Value	Unit
Technique	~	
Column volume		ml
*Max pre-column pressure		MPa
*Max delta column pressure		MPa
*Default flowrate		ml/min
*Max flowrate		ml/min
Default linear flowrate		cm/h
Max linear flowrate		cm/h
Min pH value (short term)		
Max pH value (short term)		
Min pH value (long term)		

Step	Action
2	If adding a column type for which the column hardware and medium are not made by GE Healthcare, continue to step 4.
3	• Select the <i>GE Healthcare hardware type</i> for the new column type in the drop-down list.

To filter the drop-down list to only show hardware types with certain diameters, enter the diameter range in cm in the *Min* and *Max* fields for *Show hardware types by diameter (cm)* above.

• Select the *GE Healthcare medium type* for the new column type in the drop-down list.

To filter the drop-down list to only show medium types for a specific separation technique, choose the appropriate technique in the **Show** *medium types by technique* drop-down list above.

*Result:* The following parameters are automatically filled in (can be edited if appropriate):

irameters	Value	Unit	Parameters	Value	Uni
Technique	Affinity 🗸 🗸		"Hardware diameter	1.0	cm
Column volume		ml	"Bed height		cm
"Max pre-column pressure	0.1	MPa	Typical loading range		mg
"Max delta column pressure		MPa	Total liquid volume (Vt)		ml
*Default flowrate		ml/min	Void volume (Vo)		ml
*Max flowrate		ml/min	Typical peak width at base		ml
Default linear flowrate		cm/h	Average particle diameter	90.0	
Max linear flowrate		cm/h	Molecular weight range		
Min pH value (short term)	3				
Max pH value (short term)	13		Order	ing Information	
Min pH value (long term)	4		Parameters	Value	
Max pH value (long term)	12		Name		
			Code number		
			Medium name	Blue Sepharose 6 Fas	t Flow
1D -	a includio formation		Medium code number	17-0948-01	
ne	quired information		Hardware name	C 10/40	
			U traditione and a second as	10 5000 01	

4

Enter the remaining parameter values for the new column type in the **Run Parameters**, **Details** and **Ordering Information** tabs. Fields marked with \* must be filled in.

Values in the gray fields are calculated and automatically filled in based on entered values for the corresponding parameters.

5 Select whether the the new column type should be *Global* (available for all users) or *Personal* (only available for the current user).

Step	Action
6	Click <b>Save As</b> to save the column type.
	<i>Result:</i> The <i>Save As</i> dialog opens.
	Save As
	Column type name:
	Save Cancel
7	Type in a <b>Column type name</b> and click <b>Save.</b>
	<i>Result</i> : The column type is saved in the database and displayed in the <i>Column types</i> list.

# Edit parameters for a column type

The table below describes how to edit parameters for a column type:

SLED ACLION	Ste	p	A	ct	ion
-------------	-----	---	---	----	-----

1 Select the appropriate column type for which to edit parameters in the *Col-umn types* list.



Name: GSTrap FF. 1 ml (Predefined)

*Result:* The parameters for the selected column type are displayed in the *Column Type Parameters* tab to the right.

Parameters	Value	Unit	Parameters	Value	Unit
Technique	Affinity		Hardware diameter	0.7	cm
Column volume	0.962	ml	Bed height	2.5	cm
Max pre-column pressure	0.5	MPa	Typical loading range	1.10	mg
Max delta column pressure	0.3	MPa	Total liquid volume (Vt)	0.86	ml
Default flowrate	1.0	ml/min	Void volume (Vo)		ml
Max flowrate	4.0	ml/min	Typical peak width at base	1.0	ml
Default linear flowrate	155.91	cm/h	Average particle diameter	90.0	μm
Max linear flowrate	623.63	cm/h	Molecular weight range		Mr
Min pH value (short term)	3		Ordering Information:		
Max pH value (short term)	13		Parameters	rs Value	
Min pH value (long term)	3		Name	GSTrap FE-1 ml	
Max pH value (long term)	12		Code number	17-5130-01	
			Medium name	Glutathione Sepharose 4 East Flow	
			Medium code number	17-5132-01	
			Hardware name	HiTrap, 1 ml	
			Lingdowen ande wurden.		

#### 8 Column Handling 8.2 Handling column types

#### Action Step

2

Edit... In the Column Type Parameters tab, click

Result: The Edit Column Type dialog opens.

Edit the column type parameters as appropriate on the *Run Parameters*, 3 Details and Ordering Information tabs.

Select whether the edited column type should be **Global** (available for all 4 users) or **Personal** (only available for the current user).
Step	Action
5	If editing parameters for a predefined column type, the column type must be saved with a new name.
	Click <i>Save As</i> to save the edited column type.
	<i>Result:</i> The <i>Save As</i> dialog opens.
	Save As Column type name: GSTrap FF, 1 m Save Cancel
	• Edit the <i>Column type name</i> and click <i>Save</i> .
	<i>Result:</i> The column type is saved in the database and displayed in the <i>Column types</i> list.
6	If editing parameters for a <i>Global</i> or <i>Personal</i> column type, the column type can be saved with a new name (see step 5 above) or the changes can be applied to the current column type name.
	Click <i>Save</i> .
	Result: The changes for the column type are saved.
	<b>Note:</b> When editing parameters for <i>Global</i> column types, it is recommended to save the edited column type with a new name. Other users may otherwise not be aware that the parameters have been changed for that column type.
	<b>Note:</b> Methods that use the edited column type should be updated.

## Delete column types

Note: It is not possible to delete predefined column types from the database. If a column type has any registered columns, it can not be deleted unless the individual columns are first deleted. See *Section 8.3 Handling individual columns, on page 260* for information about how to delete individual columns. If an individual column of a certain type has been used, it will not be possible to delete either the individual column or the column type.

The table below describes how to delete *Global* and *Personal* column types from the database:

Step	Action			
1	In the Select Column Type area, clear the Predefined types box.			
	Select Column Type Show by technique: Any Show by access label: Predefined types Global types, user created Personal types, user created			
	<i>Result:</i> Only <i>Global</i> and <i>Personal</i> column types are displayed in the <i>Column types</i> list.			
2	Select the column type(s) to be deleted in the <i>Column types</i> list. To select several column types use the <b>Ctrl</b> or <b>Shift</b> keyboard keys.			
3	In the <b>Column Type Parameters</b> tab, click Delete. Result: The <b>Confirm Column Type Delete</b> dialog opens.			
	Confirm Column Type Delete       Are you sure you want to permanently delete the selected Column Type(s)?       Yes			
4	Click <b>Yes</b> to delete the column type. <i>Result</i> : The column type is permanently deleted from the database.			

## Export column types

Note: It is not possible to export predefined column types from the database.

The table below describes how to export *Global* and *Personal* column types from the database:

#### Step Action

1 In the **Select Column Type** area, clear the **Predefined types** box.



*Result*: Only *Global* and *Personal* column types are displayed in the *Column types* list.

- 2 Select the column type(s) to be exported in the *Column types* list. To select several column types use the **Ctrl** or **Shift** keyboard keys.
- <sup>3</sup> In the **Column Type Parameters** tab, click Export...

Result: The Export Column Type dialog opens.

xport Column	Туре					?
Save in:	🗀 Columns		~	00	• 🛄	
My Recent Documents	Gm ColumnsInCol	droomSep09.zip				
Desktop My Documents						
My Computer						
	File name:				~	Save
My Network	Save as type:	Zip Files (*.zip)			~	Cancel

4

Select in which folder to save the information and type a name for the zip file to be exported.

*Result:* The column type information is exported. This information can be imported into another database.

## Import column types

The table below describes how to import column types into the database:

#### Step Action

1 In the **Column Type Parameters** tab in the **Column Handling** dialog, click

Result: The Import dialog opens.

mport						?
Look in:	🗀 Columns		*	G 🕫 E	• •	
My Recent Documents	ColumnsInCol	droomSep09.zip				
Desktop My Documents						
y My Computer						
	File name:	HarryJun09.zip				Open
My Network	Files of type:	Zip Files(*.zip)		•		Cancel

Step	Action
2	Locate the zip file with the column type information to be imported and click
	Open.

*Result:* The *Import Column Type* dialog opens displaying the names of the column types included in the zip file.



- 3 Make sure that the check boxes in front of the column types to be imported are checked. If a column type should not be imported clear the corresponding check box.
- 4 Check the *Import as Global* box if the column types should be global (i.e., available for all users) when imported. Otherwise, the column types will be imported as personal column types.
- 5 Click OK.

Result: The column types are imported into the database.

**Note:** If a column type to be imported has the same name as an existing column type in the database, you will be prompted to type a new name for that column type. Type in a name and click **OK**.

## Import new column list

Updated lists of predefined column types may be provided by GE Healthcare. When a new list is imported, it will replace all the predefined column types in the database with the updated column types. Only predefined column types will be replaced. User defined column types, both personal and global, will remain in the database.

**Tip:** A column list is available in the *Misc* folder of the UNICORN 6.1 installation DVD.

The table below describes how to import a new column list into the database:

Step	Action
1	In the <b>Column Type Parameters</b> tab in the <b>Column Handling</b> dialog, click

Result: The Import dialog opens.

2 Locate the zip file with the column list to be imported and click **Open**.

*Result:* The *Import* confirmation dialog opens, explaining what will will happen when the zip file is imported.



Click **Yes**.

Result: The new list of predefined column types is imported into the database.

# Print information about column types

3

The table below describes how to print information about column types:

Step	Action
1	Select the column type(s) for which to print information in the <i>Column types</i> list. To select several column types use the <b>Ctrl</b> or <b>Shift</b> keyboard keys.

#### Step Action

2 In the Column Type Parameters tab, click Print...

Result: The **Print** dialog opens.



- 3 Select **Printer**.
- 4 Select for which column types to print information:
  - All types: Prints information for all column types in the database
  - All shown types: Prints information for all column types displayed in the
     Column types list
  - Selected types: Prints information for the column type(s) selected in the Column types list
  - Select which type of information to include when printing the information:
    - Check the *Include the type's parameters* box to include the information from the *Run parameters*, *Details* and *Ordering Information* fields in the *Column Type Parameters* tab.
    - Check the *Include the associated columns* box to include the Column ID and alias of the individual columns registered for the column type. Check the *Include column's parameters* to include the parameters for each individual column registered for the column type(s).
- 6 Click OK.

5

Result: The selected information for the column type(s) is printed.

# 8.3 Handling individual columns

## Introduction

Individual columns are handled on the **Column Logbook** tab in the **Column Handling** dialog. The **Column Logbook** enables tracing of the run history for an individual column, for example, how many CIP runs have been performed using that column. Individual columns are always connected to a particular column type.

Working with columns is primarily done in the *Method Editor* and *System Control*, depending on the task to be performed.

## In this section

This section covers the following:

Section	See page
8.3.1 Individual column identification	261
8.3.2 Register a new individual column	262
8.3.3 Find an individual column	266
8.3.4 Edit individual columns	268
8.3.5 Export and import individual columns	271
8.3.6 Print and view individual column information	274

**Note:** The *Column Logbook* tab is only displayed if this option was selected when installing UNICORN.

## 8.3.1 Individual column identification

### Matrix barcode

Most pre-packed GE Healthcare columns are marked with a matrix barcode on the column label. This barcode can be scanned using the 2D barcode scanner to register new individual columns or to find columns in the database.

Columns can also be labeled with UniTag labels. A UniTag label is a unique identifier for individual columns that are not pre-labelled with a matrix barcode, such as HiTrap<sup>™</sup> columns, manually packed columns or columns from other sources. A number of UniTag labels are supplied with the system, and they can also be purchased separately.

The diagram below shows an example of a column label and a UniTag label with their matrix barcodes.



Column label

UniTag label

## 8.3.2 Register a new individual column

## Introduction

In order to take advantage of the column handling features of UNICORN, each individual column needs to be registered in the software.

**Note:** It is essential that the individual column is registered before a column performance test is performed. Otherwise the results will not be entered in the *Column Logbook*. It is not possible to enter the performance test results afterwards.

## Register an individual column

The following table describes how to register an individual column in the Column Logbook.

#### Step Action

1

Select the Column Logbook tab and then click New.

non by technique: rry v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v	Hect Column IDs Code lot exp. ID 9 by ID:	Dear	
Intro V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V V	Code lot exp. ID thy ID:	Dear	
here by access label. Find Predefined types [ Biobal types, user created ] Personal types, user created coll denn toos:	fbyID	Dear	
Padelined types Global types, user created Personal types, user created Col skern types	d by alloc		
[Blobal types, user created]         Find           [Personal types, user created]         Coll           chem types         [III]	d by alles:		
Personal types, user created Cell		Find	
oken tope:	Junns:	Column Logbook:	
and the second	) Alai	Column Data	Value
Prep SP FF 16/10		Туре	
IPrep SP XL 16/10 IScale 16: 20 Capto DEAE Transaminate		Medium Batch ID	
IS cale 16_20 Capto MMC Insulin		Medium expiration date	
IScreen Butyl-S FF		Date of first use	
IScreen Capto adhere IScreen Capto DEAE		Number of ture	
IScown Capto MMC		Max of daits reserves (MPa)	
IScreen Capto S		Number of new since last CIP	
IScreen MAC FF		Number of runs since has Cohere and and	and last
IScreen MabSelect SuRe		Number of the site countripertorna	nco ion
IScreen MabSelect Xtra IScreen Dotyl FF		measured bed neight	
Screen Phenyl FF (high sub)		Hecoulton	
IS creen Phergi HP		Autorety'	
IS creen Q FF		Plate height" (cm)	
IScreen SP FF		Plates per meter* (N/m)	
IScreen SP HP InPres FF 16/10		Kaw	
ficTrap FF crude, 1 ml		Fletention factor*	
lisTisp FF crude, 5 ml		Performance validation result	

Result: The first New Column dialog opens.

exp. ID
- Clear
ally entering UniTag lot and ID

Step	Action
2	Register the column using the 2D barcode scanner as follows:
	<ul> <li>Make sure that the mouse pointer is placed in the first position of the Code field.</li> </ul>

- Point the 2D barcode scanner towards the data matrix tag on the column label or the UniTag label.
- Press and hold the trigger.



• When the 2D barcode scanner beeps, the column ID is registered and the second *New Column* dialog opens.

3

- If no 2D barcode scanner is available, enter the column ID manually:
  - If the column has a column label, enter the column ID shown in the *Code* field.
  - If the column has a UniTag label, check the box *Add column by manually entering UniTag lot and ID* and manually enter the number for the *lot* and *ID* fields.
  - Click Continue to open the second New Column dialog.
  - **Note:** The *lot* field should contain eight digits, and the *ID* field should contain four digits. If the lot or ID numbers of the column contains fewer than eight or four digits respectively, insert leading zeros before the number.
  - **Note:** If the column has no GE Healthcare label and you have run out of UniTag labels, check the box *Add column by manually enter-ing UniTag lot and ID*, then enter an arbitrary lot and ID. This procedure is possible, but not recommended.

#### 8 Column Handling

8.3 Handling individual columns

8.3.2 Register a new individual column

4

Ste	р	Action
	-	

#### In the second **New Column** dialog:

	Code	lot	exp.	ID		
Column ID:	28-9288-13	12345678	0000-00	1234		
	☑ Add column (UniTag has	by manually er fixed values fo	ntering UniTag r Code and ex	lot and ID kp.).		
Alias (optional):	Capto Q for Rib	osome project				
Technique:	Anion Exchange					
Column type:	HiScreen Capto	o Q				1
🔽 Use medium	batch ID:		🔽 Set mediu	um expiratio	on date:	
20020110	balantib.	-	Fridau	April	30, 2010	

• Enter an Alias (optional).

**Tip:** Alias can be used for easy identification of an individual column.

• Select *Technique* and *Column type*.

**Note:** For prepacked GE Healthcare columns with a matrix barcode, these are filled in automatically.

- Check the *Use medium batch ID* and type in the batch number of the medium.
- Check the *Set medium expiration date* and select expiration date for the medium to get a notification in UNICORN when this date is reached.
   Note: The expiration date cannot be set or changed after a column has been registered.
- Enter notes for the column by clicking the **Notes...** button and enter notes in the **Notes** dialog that opens.
- Click OK.

*Result:* The entered information is saved and the registered column is displayed in the *Column Handling* dialog.



## 8.3.3 Find an individual column

## Introduction

Many features of the *Column Handling* tool require an individual column to be selected. This section describes how to find a column.

# Find and select an individual column

The table below describes how to find/select a registered column in the **Column Logbook**:

Step	Action
1	Select the <b>Column Logbook</b> tab.
2	Filter the list of column types by choosing the required technique in the pull- down menu <b>Show by technique</b> , then select the column type to which the individual column belongs.
	Select Column Type

Select Column Type	
Show by technique:	
Any	~
Show by access label:	
Predefined types	
🗹 Global types, user created	
Personal types, user created	
Column types:	
HiPrep 16/60 Sephacryl S 300 HR HiPrep 16/60 Sephacryl S 400 HR HiPrep 16/60 Sephacryl S 500 HR	^
HiPrep 26/10 Desalting	
HiPrep 26/10 Sepharose 6 FF HiPrep 26/60 Sephacryl S 100 HR HiPrep 26/60 Sephacryl S 200 HR HiPrep 26/60 Sephacryl S 300 HR HiPrep 26/60 Sephacryl S 400 HR	

#### Step Action

3 To select several column types, use the **Ctrl** and **Shift** keyboard keys.

*Result:* The individual columns registered for the selected column type(s) are displayed in the *Columns* list. The *Column Logbook* area to the right shows parameters and information for the selected column.

Ind by alive:         Prind           Columns:         Column Lgbook:           ID         Alive         Column Data         Value           17:5091/01 10021091 2015/05 0609         Project 4 Mono Q 1         Type         Mono Q 10/100 GL           Medium Bach ID         17:70719-01         Medium Bach ID         17:70719-01           Medium exprävol date         2016/05:093         2010/05:093           Number of nam since last CD         2010/05:093           Number of nam since last CDP         2           Number of nam since last CDP         2           Number of nam since last CDP         2           Number of nam since last Column performancetest         7           Measured bed height         0.00           Resolution*         0.00           Plate height*(cm)         0.00           Plate height*(cm)         0.00           Reterinin factor*         0.00           Reterinin factor*         0.00	Column IDs Coc D:	le lot	exp. ID	Clear		
dumm:         Column Logoook           DD <alas< td="">         Column Data         Value           17:5031-01 10021031 2015-05 0509         Project 4 Mono Q 1         Type         Mono Q 10/100 GL           Medium Batch ID         17:0713-01         Medium Batch ID         17:0713-01           Medium expiration date         2010-05-031         2010-05-031           Number of truns since last Ch         7         Number of truns since last CHP         2           Number of truns since last Chum performance+test         7         Number of truns since last Column performance+test         7           Measured bed height         0.00         0.00         1000         1000         1000           Plate height"(cm)         0.00         0.00         1000</alas<>	lias:			Find	Colora I andre de	
Construction         Construction         Construction           172-6031-011-0021091: 2015-05 0509         Project 4 Mono Q 1         Ippe         Mono Q 10/100 GL           Medium Batch ID         17-0713-01         Medium Batch ID         17-0713-01           Medium Batch ID         17-0713-01         Medium explaining date         2010-05-03           Number of num since last CIP         2         0.02         Number of num since last CIP         2           Number of num since last CIP         2         Number of num since last CIP         2         0.00           Number of num since last CIP         0.00         1         1         0.00         1           Plate height (nm)         0.00         0.00         1         1         1         1           Plate height (nm)         0.00         1         1         0.00         1 <t< td=""><td>8:</td><td>Δliae</td><td></td><td>2</td><td>Column Logbook:</td><td>Value</td></t<>	8:	Δliae		2	Column Logbook:	Value
Medium Batch ID         17.0719.01           Medium expiration date         2015-05-31           Date of first use         2010-05-93           Date of first use         2010-05-93           Number of runs ince last Column performance+est         7           Max of delta pressure (MPa)         0.32           Number of runs ince last Column performance+est         7           Measured bed height         0.00           Resolution*         0.00           Plate height* (nm)         0.00           Plate height* (nm)         0.00           Ka**         0.00           Featoring         0.00           Featoring         0.00           Plate height* (nm)         0.00           Feator         0.00           Faster per meter* (N/m)         0.00	-01-10021091	2015-05 0509 Project	t 4 Mono Q 1		Tune	Mano Q 10/100 GI
Medium expiration date         2015/05/31           Date of first use         2010/05/09           Number of runs of runs one fast CP         3.2           Number of runs since last CIP         2           Number of runs since last CIP         2           Number of runs since last CIP         2           Number of runs since last COUmn performance+est         7           Resolution*         0.00           Asymmetry*         0.00           Plate height*(cm)         0.00           Ka**         0.00           Ka**         0.00           Performance validation result         Notaccessible		philiphic and a second state	and the standard by		Medium Batch ID	17-0719-01
Date of first use         2010-05-09           Number of runs         7           Max of delta pressure (MPa)         0.32           Number of runs since last CIP         2           Number of runs since last Column performance+est         7           Measured bed height         7           Measured bed height         0.00           Asymmety*         0.00           Plate height* (cm)         0.00           Reserver         0.00           Reserver         0.00           Plate height* (cm)         0.00           Restrict factor*         0.00           Retention factor*         0.00           Performance validation result         Notoessible					Medium expiration date	2015-05-31
Number of runs         7           Max of defla pressure (MPa)         0.32           Number of runs since last CDP         2           Number of runs since last Column performance-test         7           Measured bed height         7           Measured bed height         0.00           Plate height* (cm)         0.00           Plate height* (cm)         0.00           Resolution*         0.00           Plate height* (cm)         0.00           Resolution*         0.00					Date of first use	2010-05-09
Max of delta pressure (MPa)         0.32           Number of runs since last CIP         2           Number of runs since last Column performance-test         7           Measured bed height         0.00           Resolution"         0.00           Asymmetry"         0.00           Plate height" (cm)         0.00           Plates per meter" (N/m)         0.00           Kav"         0.00           Plates per meter" (N/m)         0.00           Performance validation result         Nota cessible					Number of runs	7
Number of runs since last CIP     2       Number of runs since last Column performance+est     7       Measured bed height     0.00       Resolution"     0.00       Asymmetry"     0.00       Plate height" (cm)     0.00       Plates per metre" (IV/m)     0.00       Kav"     0.00       Retention factor"     0.00       Performance validation result     No.00					Max of delta pressure (MPa)	0.32
Number of runs since last Column performance-test     7       Measured bed height     0.00       Resolution*     0.00       Asymmetry*     0.00       Plate height*(cm)     0.00       Plate height*(cm)     0.00       Resolution factor*     0.00       Retention factor*     0.00       Performance validation result     Not accessible					Number of runs since last CIP	2
Measured bed height         Measured bed height           Resolution"         0.00           Asymmetry"         0.00           Plate height (cm)         0.00           Plate height (cm)         0.00           Kav"         0.00           Retention factor"         0.00           Performance validation result         Not accessible					Number of runs since last Column performance-tes	t 7
Resolution"         0.00           Asymmetry"         0.00           Plate height" (cm)         0.00           Plate spirmeter" (N/m)         0.0           Kav"         0.00           Retention factor"         0.00           Performance validation result         N.00					Measured bed height	
Asymmetry*         0.00           Plate height* (cm)         0.00           Plates per metre* (N/m)         0.00           Kav*         0.00           Retention factor*         0.00           Performance validation result         Not accessible					Resolution*	0.00
Plate height" (cm)         0.00           Plates per meter" (N/m)         0.0           Kavr <sup>a</sup> 0.00           Referition factor"         0.00           Performance validation result         Not accessible					Asymmetry*	0.00
Plates per meter" (N/m)         0.0           Kav"         0.00           Retention factor"         0.00           Performance validation result         Not accessible					Plate height" (cm)	0.00
Kav*     0.00       Retention factor*     0.00       Performance validation result     Not accessible       Table the band on the fact					Plates per meter" (N/m)	0.0
Retention factor*         0.00           Performance validation result         Not accessible					Kav <sup>×</sup>	0.00
Performance validation result Not accessible					Retention factor*	0.00
Colorisation because the first Colorisation Professional State					Performance validation result	Not accessible
Laculated based on the last Lolumn Performance test					"Calculated based on the last Column Performanc	e test

- Tip: To show all registered individual columns, select all the available column types by checking the boxes for *Predefined*, *Global* and *Personal* types, then select all the *Column Types* in the list.
- 4
- If you have a short list of individual columns registered for the column type, just select the appropriate column in the *Columns* list. To select several columns, use the **Ctrl** and **Shift** keyboard keys.
  - If you have many individual columns registered, find and select the appropriate column as described below:
    - position the cursor in the first position of the *Code* field, scan the column barcode or UniTag and click *Find*

or

- type in the barcode in the *Find by ID* field and click *Find* or
- type in the alias in the *Find by alias* field and click *Find Result:* The individual column is selected in the *Columns* list.

#### Edit individual columns 8.3.4

## Introduction

This section describes the ways in which individual columns may be edited. This includes adding and editing notes, setting notification limits and deleting individual columns.

## Add/edit notes for a column

The table below describes how to add/edit notes for an individual column:

Step	Action
1	Select the individual column for which to add/edit notes in the <b>Columns</b> list in the <b>Column Logbook</b> tab. See Section 8.3.3 Find an individual column, on page 266 for information about how to find and select a column.
2	In the <b>Column Logbook</b> tab, click Notes Result: The <b>Notes</b> dialog for the selected column opens. Notes - 28-9288-13 20090415 0000-00 0032, Desalting, RbIC Pr Column meant for use for desalting after ammonium sulphate precipitation step. Storage: 10% ethanol, Cold room 2A. If you want to borrow me, PLEASE contact Gus in room G64-31

3

0

Add/edit notes by typing in the dialog and click **OK**. Result: The notes for the column are updated.

Cancel

# Set notification limits for an individual column

Notification limits can be set for individual columns. Once the limit is reached, the user receives a message stating what action should be taken before the column is used. Examples of such limits are the *Medium expiration date*, that the column has been used a given number of times since the last CIP or column performance test were performed, or that the column performance parameters are poor so the medium should be repacked.

**Note:** Warnings related to the number of times a column has been used, for example since the last CIP was performed, are only issued when the start protocol is performed. In a method queue this may not always be shown for every run. Each run will however be noted in the column history.

The table below describes how to set notification limits for an individual column:

#### Step Action

2

1 Select the individual column for which to set **Notification Limits** in the **Columns** list in the **Column Logbook** tab. See Section 8.3.3 Find an individual column, on page 266 for information about how to find and select a column.

In the **Column Logbook** tab, click Notification Limits...

Result: The Notification Limits dialog for the selected column opens.

Notification Limits - 17-0686-01 200901	19 2009-01 000	01 🛛 🔀
Medium expiration date		
Number of runs since last CIP:		0
Number of runs since last Column Performance	test:	0
Plate Height (cm):		0.00000
Plates per meter (N/m):		0.0
Resolution:		0.00
Retention factor:		0.00
	Min	Max
Asymmetry:	0.00	0.00
🗌 Kav:	0.00	0.00
0	ОК	Cancel

3 Check the appropriate boxes and enter notification values.

When the values are reached or a value is outside the defined range, a warning will be displayed that action should be taken.

4 Click OK.

*Result*: The settings are saved and the dialog is closed.

## **Delete individual columns**

The table below describes how to delete an individual column from the database:

Step	Action
1	Select the individual column to be deleted in the <b>Columns</b> list in the <b>Column</b> <b>Logbook</b> tab. See Section 8.3.3 Find an individual column, on page 266 for in- formation about how to find and select a column.
	To select several columns in the <b>Columns</b> list, use the <b>Ctrl</b> and <b>Shift</b> keys.
2	In the <b>Column Logbook</b> tab, click Delete. Result: The <b>Confirm Column Delete</b> dialog opens.
	Confirm Column Delete            Are you sure you want to permanently delete the selected Column(s)?        Yes     No
3	Click <b>Yes</b> in the <b>Confirm Column Delete</b> dialog. <i>Result</i> : The individual column is deleted. <b>Note:</b> Individual columns that have been used cannot be deleted.

## 8.3.5 Export and import individual columns

### Introduction

The information for individual columns is stored in the UNICORN database. This information may be exported to a zip file in order to move the information to another UNICORN installation. This section describes how to export individual columns from UNICORN and how to import previously exported columns.

### **Export individual columns**

Individual columns can be exported from the database to a zip file. The columns can then be imported to another database if appropriate.

The table below describes how to export individual columns from the database:

Step	Action
1	Select the individual column(s) to be exported in the <b>Columns</b> list in the <b>Column Logbook</b> tab. See Section 8.3.3 Find an individual column, on page 266 for information about how to find and select a column.
	To select several columns in the <b>Columns</b> list, use the <b>Ctrl</b> and <b>Shift</b> keys.
2	In the <b>Column Logbook</b> tab, click Export Result: The <b>Export Column Type</b> dialog opens.
3	Select in which folder to save the information and type a name for the zip file to be exported.
	<i>Result:</i> The individual column information is exported. The column information can be imported into another database.

### Import individual columns

Individual columns that have been exported and saved locally can be imported into another database.

The table below describes how to import individual column information to a database:

### 8 Column Handling

8.3 Handling individual columns

8.3.5 Export and import individual columns

1

Step	Action
------	--------

In the **Column Logbook** tab, click Import...

Result: The Import dialog opens.

Import		? 🗙
Look in:	🔁 Column Handling 💿 🗿 🌮 🖽 🗸	
My Recent Documents Desktop My Documents	ColIndExp ColTypeExp ColUmnHandlingLotta ColUmnIndividuals.zip	
	File name:	Open
My Network	Files of type: Zip Files(*.zip)	Cancel

#### Step Action

2 Locate the zip file with the column type information to be imported and click **Open**.

*Result*: The *Import Column* dialog opens displaying the barcodes and aliases of the individual columns included in the \*.zip file.

Import Column	×
File name D:\Methods Folder\Columns\AllColumns.zip	
Zeseze contain to hisport     Zesezese 13 20080603 0000-00 0032 [Gel filtration     Zesezese 13 20090415 0000-00 0032 [Desalting, Rb     Zesezese 13 20080704 0000-00 1043 [Desalting, respective	
<ul> <li>✓ 28-9288-13 20090328 0000-00 0012  Anion exchar</li> </ul>	
OK Cancel	

- 3 Make sure that the check boxes in front of the individual columns to be imported are checked. If a column should not be imported clear the corresponding check box.
- 4 Click **OK**.

Result: The columns are imported into the database.

**Note:** If an individual column to be imported has the same barcode or alias name as an existing column in the database, a dialog will be displayed saying that the column already exists in the database and that it will not be imported.

## 8.3.6 Print and view individual column information

## Introduction

This section describes how to view the run history for an individual column, and how to print column information.

## View individual column history

2

It is possible to view the run history for an individual column to see how many runs that have been performed using the column. The path to the result files for each run is also displayed. If the run was a column performance test or CIP run, this is shown as a remark.

The table below describes how to view the **Column History** for a column:

- 1 Select the individual column for which to view **Column History** in the **Columns** list in the **Column Logbook** tab. See Section 8.3.3 Find an individual column, on page 266 for information about how to find and select a column.
  - In the **Column Logbook** tab, click <sup>Column History</sup>

Result: The Column History dialog for the selected column opens.

Date	Result	Path	Remark
1/17/2009 2:32 PM +02:00	AIEX purification standard method 001	/DefaultHome/Project 4/AIEX purification standard method 001	
4/17/2009 2:39 PM +02:00	AIEX purification scouting col pos 001	/DefaultHome/Project 4/Test 3 different columns/AIEX purification scouting col pos 001	
4/17/2009 2:40 PM +02:00	AIEX purification scouting col pos 005	/DefaultHome/Project 4/Test 3 different columns/AIEX purification scouting col pos 005	
4/17/2009 2:40 PM +02:00	AIEX purification scouting col pos 006	/DefaultHome/Project 4/Test 3 different columns/AIEX purification scouting col pos 006	
4/17/2009 2:47 PM +02:00	Column CIP Mono Q 1 001 001	/DefaultHome/Project 4/Column CIP Mono Q 1 001 001	CIP
4/17/2009 2:52 PM +02:00	Column Performance Test AIEX 001	/DefaultHome/Project 4/Column Performance Test AIEX 001	Column Perfo
4/17/2009 2:54 PM +02:00	AIEX purification standard method 002	/DefaultHome/Project 4/AIEX purification standard method 002	

The runs performed using the column are listed. The date, result name and location and any remarks for the run are displayed.

3 Click *Close* to close the dialog.

# Print information about individual columns

The table below describes how to print information for individual columns:

0.00 1.00001	Ste	p A	ction
--------------	-----	-----	-------

1Select the appropriate column(s) for which to print information in theColumnslist in the Column Logbook tab. See Section 8.3.3 Find an individualcolumn, on page 266 for information about how to find and select a column.

To select several columns in the *Columns* list, use the Ctrl and Shift keys.

<sup>2</sup> In the **Column Logbook** tab, click Print...

*Result*: The *Print* dialog opens.

Printer:	SHIBA e-STUDIO451cSeriesPCL5c	~	Properties
Print items:	Selected columns     All shown columns     All columns		
0		OK	Cancel

- 3 Select **Printer**.
- 4 Select for which individual column(s) to print information:
  - Selected columns: Prints information for the column(s) selected in the Columns list
  - All shown columns: Prints information for all columns displayed in the Columns list
  - All columns: Prints information for all columns in the database
- 5 Click **OK**.

Result: The Column ID, alias and parameters for the columns are printed.

## 8.4 Column performance

## Introduction

Column performance can be tested by measuring the height equivalent to a theoretical plate (*HETP*) and asymmetry factor (*As*) values. Tests should be run directly after packing or obtaining a new column, regularly during the lifetime of the column and when separation performance is seen to deteriorate. By regularly monitoring the performance of an individual column, UNICORN can generate appropriate warnings when a cleaning procedure needs to be applied, or even when the column lifetime is approaching its end. For a description on how to set such notification limits see *Set notification limits for an individual column, on page 269.* 

This section describes the workflow to run a *Column Performance Test*, and how to generate a performance report for a specific column.

## **Column performance test**

The following table describes the workflow for generating and analyzing a Column Performance Test result.

Step	Action	
1	Create a <b>Column</b> Chapter	<b>Column Performance Test</b> method, or a method containing a <b>performance test</b> phase. For details how to create methods see 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25.
	Note:	The option <i>Enable logging of Column Performance Test</i> should be automatically selected in the Phase Properties for the Method Settings phase when this method is created. This can be dese- lected if logging of the performance test is not desired, but it should normally be kept selected.
		Column Logbook Enable logging of Column Performance Test CIP

Step	Action	
2	Run the UNICORI	method <sup>1</sup> . For details on running a method, see ÄKTA avant and N 6.1 User Manual.
	Suitable for exan NaCl and	samples that can be used to monitor the column performance are nple 1% acetone (measuring the absorbance at 280 nm), or 2.0 M d eluting with 0.5 M NaCl.
	Note:	A sample volume between 0.5% and 3% of the column volume and a flow rate between 15 and 30 cm/h is recommended.
		The calculated number of plates and the asymmetry factor will in part depend on the selected flow rate. To ensure that test re- sults are comparable, always use the same flow rate for the tests.
3	Evaluate	the Column Performance Test, see UNICORN 6.1 Evaluation Manual.

<sup>1</sup> The individual column must be selected when the method run is started in order to register the results from the column performance test in the column logbook. The result cannot be logged for the individual column at a later time.

The individual AxiChrom column must also be selected when performing an Intelligent Packing method run, since this method includes column performance tests which should be logged.

### Create a performance report

A column performance report can be created before using an individual column to ensure that it is in good condition for use. The performance report contains the following information:

- Run and performance parameters
- Notes
- Performance graphs (optional)
- Run history

The table below describes how to generate a column performance report:

#### Step Action

1 Select the individual column for which to generate a *Performance Report* in the *Columns* list in the *Column Logbook* tab. See *Section 8.3.3 Find an individual column, on page 266* for information about how to find and select a column.

#### 8 Column Handling 8.4 Column performance

#### Step Action

2

In the **Column Logbook** tab, click Performance Report

Result: The Performance Report dialog for the selected column opens.

Printer:	Microsoft Office Document Image	Writer Vriter Properties		
Performan V Max Pesc Asym Plate Plate V Rete	nce graphs of delta pressure (MPa) slution metry : height (cm) :s per meter (N/m) ntion factor	Preview page 1(3)	<ul> <li>Alternative state state</li></ul>	-08

- 3 Select **Printer**.
- 4 Check the appropriate boxes in the *Performance graphs* area to include the corresponding graphs in the report.
  - **Note:** The parameters and the corresponding values from the *Column Logbook* are always included on the first page in the report together with the latest performance test results. All runs are listed in the *Run History* at the end of the report, including *Column Performance Test* and *CIP* runs which are labelled.
- 5 A preview of the report is shown on the right side of the dialog. Use the buttons above the report to scroll the preview.
- 6 Click **Print** to print the information.
- 7 Click *Close* to close the dialog.

## 8.5 Intelligent Packing of AxiChrom™ columns

## Introduction

UNICORN 6.1 features a solution for Intelligent Packing of AxiChrom columns. The AxiChrom column family feature hands-free packing using internal hydraulic axial compression. Used with ÄKTA avant 150 systems, Intelligent Packing of AxiChrom columns can be performed using either a predefined Intelligent Packing method, or by creating a user defined method including an Intelligent Packing phase.

The UNICORN 6.1 Method Manual provides an overview how to apply the Intelligent Packing method and how to create the individual AxiChrom column in UNICORN **Column Handling**. More information about the use of the AxiChrom column is available in the operating instructions for the columns.



# AxiChrom column types and individual AxiChrom columns

In order to obtain correct default parameter values for the Intelligent Packing method phase, a specific AxiChrom column type must be created, based on the AxiChrom hardware and the selected media. This is described below in *Create an AxiChrom column type*. The default values for the created AxiChrom column type will be applied (e.g. for the bed height) when this column type is used in a method.

When the column is to be packed, an individual AxiChrom column must be created. This is described below in *Create an individual AxiChrom column*. Registering this individual column for the column packing run will enable the results from the column performance tests to be registered in the column logbook for the column. Two performance tests are part of the Intelligent Packing method, one downflow and one upflow. When the evaluation of the tests are performed, the actual packed bed height should be used. This bed height will be registered in the column logbook. The evaluation procedure is described in the UNICORN 6.1 Evaluation Manual.

To ensure that the actual packed bed height is applied when creating or running methods using the AxiChrom column type, you must update the column type definition and replace the default value with the actual, registered value of the individual column. Until this is done, the default bed height will be applied.

**Tip:** If it is essential that the exact packed bed height is used, you should create a column type for each individual AxiChrom column and update the bed height value after each time the column is repacked.

### Create an AxiChrom column type

The table below describes how to create the AxiChrom column type: **Note:** To ensure that the actual packed bed height is applied, you must

Step	Action
1	Choose the <b>Tools:Column Handling</b> menu command. <i>Result</i> : The <b>Column Handling</b> dialog opens.
2	In the <b>Column Type Parameters</b> tab in the <b>Column Handling</b> dialog, click

Result: The New Column Type dialog opens.

Step	Action					
3	• Select the appropriate AxiChrom column hardware in the <i>GE Healthcare hardware type</i> drop-down list.					
	<ul> <li>Select the <i>GE Healthcare medium type</i> for the new AxiChrom column type in the drop-down list.</li> </ul>					
	Tip:Only some of the available media are approved by GE Healthcare for use in the Intelligent Packing of AxiChrom columns. Click the <i>GE approved media</i> button in the Intelligent Packing phase to view a list of the approved media and bed heights.					
	Other media can also be selected, but the packing procedure will then be performed with custom packing settings with a set of general default settings.					
	<i>Result:</i> Based on the selections, some of the column type parameters are automatically filled in.					
4	Enter the remaining parameter values for the new column type in the <b>Run</b> <b>Parameters</b> , <b>Details</b> and <b>Ordering Information</b> tabs, for example					
	target bed height					
	max flow rate					
	• max delta column pressure (based on chosen media)					
	Fields marked with * must be filled in.					
	Values in the gray fields are calculated and automatically filled in based on entered values for the corresponding parameters.					
5	Select whether the the new column type should be <b>Global</b> (available for all users) or <b>Personal</b> (only available for the current user).					
6	Click <b>Save As</b> to save the column type.					
	<i>Result:</i> The <i>Save As</i> dialog opens.					
	Save As					
	Column type name:					
	Save Cancel					

Step	Action
7	Type in a <b>Column type name</b> and click <b>Save.</b>
	<b>Tip:</b> To simplify identification, it is recommended to choose a name for the column type comprised of hardware name, media name and bed height. However, the Method Editor will recognize the column from the selected hardware irrespective of the name.
	<i>Result</i> : The AxiChrom column type is saved in the database and displayed in the <b>Column types</b> list.

# Create an individual AxiChrom column

Once a column type consisting of the AxiChrom hardware and selected media is created, you can proceed to register an individual column.

**Note:** It is essential to create an individual column <u>before</u> the column packing since it is impossible to afterwards manually register the results from the column performance tests in the **Column Logbook**.

Step	Action
------	--------

1 Select the *Column Logbook* tab and then click *New*.

Result: The first **New Column** dialog opens.

Add a new colu	umn by entering a	Column ID, e	ither manually	or with a b	arcode sc
	Code	lot	exp.	ID	
Column ID:			-		Clear
	Add column b (UniTag has I	y manually e fixed values fi	ntering UniTag or Code and e	) lot and ID xp.).	

2

- Register the column either by scanning a UniTag or manually as described in Section 8.3.2 Register a new individual column, on page 262. and
  - click Continue.

Result: The second New Column dialog opens.

Step	Action				
3	In the second <b>New Column</b> dialog:				
	<ul> <li>Enter an <i>Alias</i> (optional).</li> <li>Tip: Alias can be used for easy identification of an individual column.</li> </ul>				
	• Select <b>Technique</b> and the AxiChrom <b>Column type</b> you created before.				
	• Check the <i>Use medium batch ID</i> and type in the batch number of the medium in the column.				
	<ul> <li>Check the Set medium expiration date and select expiration date for the medium to get a notification in UNICORN when this date is reached.</li> <li>Note: The expiration date cannot be set or changed after a column has been registered.</li> </ul>				
4	Enter notes for the column by clicking the <b>Notes</b> button and typing infor- mation in the <b>Notes</b> dialog that opens.				
5	Click <b>OK</b> .				
	<i>Result</i> : The entered information is saved and the registered column is displayed in the <i>Column Handling</i> dialog.				
Note:	Since the packing has not been performed at this point, the bed height for the column will be a target bed height based on the selected AxiChrom col- umn type. This value is adjusted after the column performance tests are evaluated and the <b>Column Logbook</b> is updated.				

# Prepare an Intelligent Packing method

Use the predefined method *Intelligent Packing* to prepare a method for packing the AxiChrom column.

Step	Action
1	Open a new, predefined Intelligent Packing method.

Step	Action			
2	In the <i>Method Settings</i> phase:			
	Select the AxiChrom column type you created previously			
	<b>Note:</b> All the default settings for an Intelligent Packing method will be generated when the AxiChrom column is selected, including target bed height and media. The default column position will be selected. It is recommended not to change any settings in the <i>Method Settings</i> phase of the method.			
3	In the <b>Intelligent Packing</b> phase:			
	Select GE approved packing settings (default)			
	or			
	Custom packing settings			
	Tip:The GE approved packing settingshave been validated by GEHealthcare. If you wish to use other settings, for example othermedia or other bed height settings, you must select Custompacking settings.			
4	If you selected to enter your own <b>Custom packing settings</b> , you can edit the following settings:			
	Select to			
	<ul> <li>Pack by Packing Factor and choose a packing factor value or</li> </ul>			
	- Pack to the target bed height			
	Change the adapter velocity			
	and			
	Select to use flow conditioning			
	If you selected to use <b>GE approved packing settings</b> , proceed with the step below.			
	<b>Note:</b> It is not recommended to change the default position selections in the subsequent steps.			
5	If necessary, select the Inlets for hydraulic chamber liquid and for the mobile phase.			
6	If necessary, select the column position for the hydraulic chamber (only column position A is used) Tip: Click the <i>Column Connection</i> button to view information about the connections, including an illustration.			

Step	Action				
7	Enter the slurry start concentration to generate a slurry recipe, which is shown in a summary in the <i>Start Notes</i> at the start of the method run. Y can view this recipe by clicking the <i>Slurry Recipe</i> button.				
	Note:	The accuracy of the slurry preparation will affect the packed bed height.			
	Note:	This function is not available when <b>Custom packing settings</b> is selected.			
8	Verify the settings in the <i>Equilibration</i> phase.				
9	Verify th	Verify the settings in the downflow Column Performance Test phase.			
10	Verify the settings in the upflow Column Performance Test phase.				
11	Save the	method.			

# Run the method and evaluate the packing

Once the *Intelligent Packing* method is ready, you can proceed to perform the actual packing of the individual column you have registered. Refer to the AxiChrom operating instruction for instructions how to prepare the column, connect it to the ÄKTA avant 150 system and perform the packing run.

The Intelligent Packing method includes two **Column Performance Test** phases, evaluating both the column upflow and downflow performance. Evaluate the results from these test as described in the UNICORN 6.1 Evaluation Manual and adjust the actual bed height according to the results if necessary.

# 9 Text edit methods

## Introduction

Normally, methods are created and edited using the *Method Outline, Phase library* and *Phase Properties* panes in the *Method Editor* (see *Chapter 3 Create and edit methods, on page 25* for information about how to create and edit methods using the *Phase Properties* pane). However, in some cases, you may want to edit a method or phase using the *Text Instructions*. This can be an option for fine-tuning or optimization of a method.

This chapter gives an overview of the *Text Instructions* pane and describes how to use the *Text Instructions* pane to create and edit methods. It also describes some text instruction applications and how to access information about the text instructions.

## In this chapter

This chapter contains these sections:

Section	See page
9.1 Overview	287
9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane	295
9.3 Specific instructions	326

## 9.1 Overview

## Introduction

This section gives an overview of working with text instructions and a description of the *Text Instruction* pane.

## In this section

This section contains the following sub-sections:

Section	See page
9.1.1 Working with text instructions	288
9.1.2 The Text Instructions pane	290

## 9.1.1 Working with text instructions

## Introduction

Phases are normally edited in the *Phase Properties* pane. If you have selected a phase in the *Method Editor* and the *Text Instructions* tab is selected, the corresponding phase block is selected in the *Text Instructions*.

Changes made in the *Phase Properties* pane are automatically updated on the *Text Instructions* pane. However, if text editing the method in the *Text Instructions* pane, the settings in the *Phase Properties* pane will be replaced by a list of phase variables.

## Text editing a method

Adding, editing or deleting any blocks or instructions in a phase in the **Text Instructions** area means text editing of the method. When a method has been text edited, one or several of the phases displayed in the **Method Editor** window are affected depending on the type of editing performed.

When text editing a method, the settings in the **Phase Properties** pane will be replaced with a list of phase variables that may be changed. The letter **T** next to the phase name in the **Method Editor** window indicates that the phase has been text edited.

The illustration below shows the **Phase Properties** pane when a method has been text edited and the indication (**T**) on the phase that has been text edited. The **Phase Properties** pane shows a list of phase variables.
	Phase Properties	Text Instructions iT			
Method Settings	Column Wash IT (This phase has been text	edited.)			
Equilibration					
•					
Sample Application					
•	_				
Column Wash	Phase Variables				
	Block	Variable		Value	Range
20074 (Sec. 19	COLUMN WASH	Inlet B		B1	~
Elution	COLUMN WASH	Percent E	l (Column Wash) {%B}	0.00	0.00 - 100.00
	COLUMN WASH	Flow rate	(ml/min)	1.000	0.000 - 25.000
		Pressure	control	Pre column pres	sure 🗙
Equilibration	Start frac (Column Wash	n) Outlet fra	c start position (Column Wash)	Out 1	~
		Outlet fra	c volume (Column Wash) (ml)	20000.00	0.01 - 20000.00
▼	Wash	Column v	iash volume (CV)	20.00	0.00 - 999999.00
User Defined	[ <b>Τ</b> ]				
	_				

# Considerations when text editing a method

Before starting to text edit a method, consider the following:

- Editing instructions in the *Text Instructions* pane is only recommended for advanced users.
- If the text instructions for a method are edited manually, the phase properties will no longer show all optional settings but only the *Phase Variables*. To restore the phase properties you have to undo the edited text instructions by clicking the *Restore Phase Properties* button which is displayed in the *Phase Properties* tab after text instructions have been edited.
- Several phases may be labelled as text edited when editing a single phase in the *Text Instructions* pane. This is the case when editing, for example, the phase *Method Settings* because several parameters are used in other phases.
- Do not mix text edited and non text edited phases unless you clearly understand the consequences.

# 9.1.2 The Text Instructions pane

# Introduction

This section gives an overview of the *Text Instructions* pane in the *Method Editor* and the structure of a text method.

# Illustration of the Text Instructions pane

The *Text Instructions* pane consists of two areas, the *Text Instructions* area and the *Instruction Box*.

The illustration below shows the *Method Editor* window with the *Text Instructions* tab selected. The phase *Equilibration* is selected in the *Text Instructions* area and the corresponding phase is highlighted in blue in the *Method Outline* and the *Gradient* panes.



The table below describes the different areas in the *Text Instructions* pane:

Area	Description
1	<i>Text Instructions</i> area: Shows the method as a list of individual text instructions. The instructions are grouped into blocks (denoted by blue square symbols in the figure below) to obtain a logical overview of the method.
2	<i>Instruction Box</i> : Shows the available instructions. It can be displayed using the <i>Auto Hide</i> function (see <i>Auto Hide optional panes, on page 18</i> for more information). Use the <i>Instruction Box</i> to:
	<ul> <li>insert, change, replace and delete blocks and instructions in the method</li> <li>delete phases</li> <li>specify breakpoints, parameters and variables</li> <li>Note: It is not possible to add phases using the <i>Instruction Box</i>. For information about how to add phases, see <i>Section 3.3.2 Edit the method outline, on page 43</i>.</li> </ul>

# Structure of the text method

A method in the *Text Instructions* area consists of a *Main* block that contains the *Base* instruction (mandatory) and the appropriate phases and blocks to be used in the method. Blocks containing valid instructions are denoted by blue square symbols (for a description of other icons that may appear, see *Description of icons and text formats in the text method, on page 293*).

Structuring the method into blocks enables reuse of instructions in the method. It also makes it possible to perform a sequence of instructions using watches (see *Section 9.3.3 Watch instructions, on page 333* for more information about watch instructions).

The illustration below shows an example of a method in the *Text Instructions* area:

9 Text edit methods9.1 Overview9.1.2 The Text Instructions pane



The table below describes the different parts in the method:

Part	Description		
Main	The main block contains the complete method. It contains the <b>Base</b> instruction (mandatory) and the appropriate phases with instructions to be executed in a method.		
Phase	Blocks at the highest level in the method represents the major steps in the process flow and are called phases. Each phase can contain sub-blocks, that is, blocks at a lower level.		
	Note: If the method has not been text edited, proper- ties for the phase can be set in the <i>Phase</i> <i>Properties</i> pane.		
	<b>Note:</b> New phases can only be added to the <i>Method</i> <i>Outline</i> using the <i>Phase Library</i> . It is however possible to copy and paste an existing phase in the <i>Text Instructions</i> pane.		
Block	Each block starts with a <i>Base</i> instruction, continues with the appropriate instructions and always ends with an <i>End_Block</i> instruction.		
Sub-block	A sub-block is a block at a lower level than a phase that may contain conditional instructions or other instructions for specific events within a phase.		
	Each sub-block starts with a <b>Base</b> instruction, continues with the appropriate instructions and always ends with an <b>End_Block</b> instruction.		

# Description of icons and text formats in the text method

The table below describes the icons and text formats that may appear in the the *Text Instructions* pane:

Icon/text format	Description
Blue square beside text	A block containing instructions that can be run.
Blue square with a red cross	A block containing one or more instructions that are not possible to run due to instrument configuration incompat- ibility (syntax errors).
Bold text	Instructions that can be run.
Red dot	Instructions that are not possible to run. All such instruc- tions must be deleted or changed before a method can be run. See Section 9.2.3 Working with text instructions, on page 309.
	<ul> <li>Instructions that apply to a different instrument con- figuration (can occur if a method is written for one system and saved for another)</li> </ul>
	Instructions for deselected components in the <i>System</i> Setup.
	• References to blocks that are not defined in the method (e.g., a <i>Watch</i> instruction but no instructions to be executed when the <i>Watch</i> is activated)
Normal text	Instructions that will not be run. Instructions with a red dot are formatted as normal text instead of bold text. Unused instructions are also formatted as normal text. Instead of deleting instructions they can be moved to unused instructions below the text method.

Icon/text format	Description
Text with a red loop symbol	When a block is called from within itself this will generate a potentially infinite loop. It is not possible to run such a method.

# 9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

# Introduction

This section describes how to create or edit methods using specific text instructions. The general structure of the text method syntax is described, including the major hierarchy of the text method parts (phases and blocks).

## In this section

This section contains these sub-sections:

Section	See page
9.2.1 Base instruction	296
9.2.2 Working with phases and blocks	300
9.2.3 Working with text instructions	309
9.2.4 Method variables	315

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.1 Base instruction

# 9.2.1 Base instruction

# Introduction

Every method block must start with a *Base* instruction, defining the base for calculating breakpoints (see also *Structure of the text method, on page 291*). Different blocks can use different bases.

This section describes how to choose and edit settings for the **Base** instruction.

# What base should I use?

Depending on the experiment, different bases should be used. Use the base that most closely suits the purpose of the block. Column volume (*CV*) is recommended as the base for most steps in a run. In some situations, however, it may be more suitable to use a time or volume base for individual blocks.

Use	When
CV	the method should be adjusted according to the selected column. In this way, you do not need to edit the method when changing column size.
Volume	the same volume should be used regardless of which column is used.
Time	a defined time is required and the volume used is not critical, or if the flow rate is zero.

The table follows lists few examples when different bases should be used:

# Edit settings for a base instruction

The following table describes how to edit settings for a base instruction:

SLED ACLIUN	Ste	p	Action
-------------	-----	---	--------

1 Select the base instruction for which to edit the settings in the *Text Instructions* area.



Result:

• The settings for the selected **Base** instruction are displayed in the **Param**eters for **Base** area in the **Instruction Box**.

	- 01	Para	meters for Base		
0.00 CV	= Uther	<u>^</u>	Column Type		
ar	Block	Var	. Any		~
	Continue		Base		
	End_Block		CV.		
	End				
	Hold	-	Volume	[0.100 - 999999.0]	
	Loop	Var		0.100 ml	
	End Loop				
	Message				
	New chromatogram	~			

• If a *Base* instruction in a phase or block was selected using the same parameter settings as the *Main* block, this is displayed in the *Instruction Box*.

Parameter	rs for Base	
	Base	
	SameAsMain 🗸	

2

- Select the appropriate **Base** from the **Base** drop-down list:
  - Volume (the unit depends on which Instrument Configuration used)
  - Time (minutes)
  - **CV**, column volume (the corresponding volume in for example ml can be defined numerically or taken from the **Column Type** list)
  - **SameAsMain** (does not apply for the main block). The block will inherit the base defined in the main block.

Result: The settings in the **Parameters for Base** area are updated.

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.1 Base instruction

#### Step Action

3

Select the appropriate **Column Type** in the drop-down list.

The table below gives a short descriptions of the available options:

Column parameter	Description
Any	Any column can be used in the block. If the <b>Column Type</b> is set to <b>Any</b> and the <b>Base</b> is set to <b>CV</b> , enter the column volume in the <b>Volume</b> field.
ColumnSameAs- Main	The same column as in the main block will be used. When the <b>Base</b> is set to <b>Volume</b> but the flow still goes through the column, the <b>Column Type</b> can be set to <b>SameAsMain</b> to provide information on, for example, pressure limits for the column.
Named column type (e.g., HiTrap Q HP, 1 ml)	The named column type will be used in the block. The volume specified in the selected column def- inition will automatically be used for <b>Volume</b> pa- rameter in the method block, and thus used to calculate column volumes ( <b>CV</b> ). The <b>Volume</b> pa- rameter may then not be edited manually. The Column Type parameter can be defined as a variable. This may be useful if it is desirable to change column type when starting the method run in the <b>Variable List</b> during the <b>Start Protocol</b> (see Set up a Start Protocol, on page 54). See Section 9.2.4 Method variables, on page 315 for information about how to define variables.

#### Step Action

4 Click **Change** or **Replace** to save the settings for the selected **Base** instruction.

*Result*: The parameters for the *Base* instruction are updated.

**Note:** If the column type is changed, the **Column Value Update** warning dialog opens, displaying the changes that will be made in the method that will be made based on the column default values (see diagram below). If these changes are correct, click **OK**, otherwise click **Cancel**.

The column typ column default v	e used by the method values?	has been changed. U	pdate these instructions with	n the			
Block	Instruction	Parameter	Variable	Value	New Value	Unit	1
METHOD SETTINGS	Alarm pre column pressure	High alarm	Pre column pressure limit	20.00	0.50	MPa	
IETHOD SETTINGS	Alarm delta column pressure	High alarm	Delta column pressure limit	20.00	0.30	MPa	
ETHOD SETTINGS	Noise reduction UV	Averaging time	UV averaging time	0.2	5.0	sec	
ETHOD SETTINGS	System flow	Flow rate	Flow rate	1.000	8.000	ml/min	
QUILIBRATION	System flow	Flow rate	Flow rate	1.000	8.000	ml/min	
nject	System flow	Flow rate	Flow rate	1.000	8.000	ml/min	
OLUMN WASH	System flow	Flow rate	Flow rate	1.000	8.000	ml/min	
LUTION	System flow	Flow rate	Flow rate	1.000	8.000	ml/min	
OLUMN WASH_1	System flow	Flow rate	Flow rate	1.000	8.000	ml/min	
QUILIBRATION_1	System flow	Flow rate	Flow rate	1.000	8.000	ml/min	

9 Text edit methods9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane9.2.2 Working with phases and blocks

# 9.2.2 Working with phases and blocks

## Introduction

This section describes how to add, delete and edit phases and blocks in the text method. It also describes how to import blocks from other methods.

#### **Phases vs blocks**

Because phases are blocks at the highest level in the text method, the same editing operations can be performed. In this section the name block will be used both for phase blocks and other blocks unless otherwise stated.

#### Exception

It is not possible to add a phase using the *Instruction Box*. A new phase must be added from the *Phase Library*. The *User Defined* phase is intended for this purpose, but any phase may be text edited.

See Section 3.3.2 Edit the method outline, on page 43 for information about how to add phases to the **Method Outline**.

#### **Method blocks**

Instructions in each block are executed in the order they are written. The instructions within a block are executed until the block is finished or the *End\_Block* instruction is executed. Any settings made in a block are valid throughout the method until the settings are changed.

However, if a conditional instruction, e.g., a *Watch* instruction controlling the start of a sub-block, is included in a phase the instructions in the sub-block are executed when the condition for that *Watch* is met (e.g., when a particular monitor signal meets a given condition).

# **Block length**

The length of a block is determined by the breakpoint of the last instruction in the block. Even if all breakpoints are set to 0, the instructions might take some time/volume because they are executed sequentially.

The illustration below shows an example of a method where *Equilibration* has a breakpoint set to 5:

÷	0.	00 Ph	ase: Equilibration
		0.00	Base: SameAsMain
		0.00	Inlet A: (A1)#Inlet A
		0.00	Inlet B: (B1)#Inlet B
		0.00	Gradient: (0.00)#Percent B (Equilibration) {%B}, 0.00 {base}
		0.00	System flow: (1.000)#Flow rate {ml/min}, (Pre column pressure)#Pressure control
		0.00	System wash: (25)#Fill system (Equilibration) {ml}, Outlet valve
		0.00	Watch UV parameters: 0.00 {mAU}, 1.00 {mAU}
		0.00	Hold until: UV 1, Stable signal, 0.03 {min}, Infinite {base}
		0.00	Auto zero UV
	ė 🗖	0.00	Block: Equilibrate
		··· 0.	DO Base: SameAsMain
		(5	00)#Equilibration volume End_Block
		0.00	Auto zero UV
		0.00	End_Block

In the example above, the value 5.00 will be 5 column volumes (*CV*) if the *Base* in the *Main* block is set to *CV*, 5 minutes if *Base* is set to *Time* or 5 ml if *Base* is set to *Volume*.

To extend the length of a block without performing any other operation, set the breakpoint of the **End\_block** instruction appropriately, for example, as in the illustration below:



In this example, the block will end after 0.5 ml, since **Base** is set to **Volume**.

An estimation of the time for running the method can be obtained in the **Method Duration** and Variables window. See View and print the method duration time and variables, on page 60.

# View/hide instructions in blocks

The table below describes how to view or hide blocks and instructions in the *Text Instructions* pane:

If you want to	then
expand all blocks in the method	double-click <b>Main</b>

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.2 Working with phases and blocks

If you want to	then
view the instructions in	<ul> <li>click the "+" symbol</li></ul>
a block	or <li>double-click the block name.</li>
hide the instructions in	<ul> <li>click the "-" symbol</li></ul>
a block	or <li>double-click the block name.</li>

# Add phases

Phases can be added to a text method by:

- adding any phase to the method from the *Phase library*. The phase *User Defined* is designed for use in creating text methods from scratch, and consists only of *Base* and *End\_block* instructions. See *Section 3.3.2 Edit the method outline, on page 43* for information about how to add a phase to the *Method Outline*.
  - or
- by copying/pasting an existing phase in the text method and then edit it. See *Copy* and paste blocks, on page 303 for information about how to copy and paste blocks.

**Note:** It is not possible to add a new phase using the *Instruction Box*.

# Add blocks in a phase

The table below describes how to add blocks in a phase:

Step	Action				
1	Select the instruction or block after which you want to insert the new block				
2	Select <b>Other:Block</b> in the <b>Instruction Box</b> .				
3	<ul> <li>Enter a name for the block in the <i>Block</i> field.</li> <li>Click the <i>Insert</i> button.</li> </ul>				

*Result:* The block is inserted after the block that was selected in step 1.

# Copy and paste blocks

The table below describes how to copy and paste a block.

Step	Action					
1	Select the block you want to copy.					
	click the <i>Copy</i> icon in the <i>Toolbar</i>					
	or					
	right-click the block and choose <i>Copy</i>					
	or					
	<ul> <li>select Edit:Copy (Ctrl+C)</li> </ul>					
2	Select the instruction line just above the point where you want the block to be pasted.					
	click the <b>Paste</b> icon in the <b>Toolbar</b>					

ethod				Select block
Folder name	System	Last modified	Cre 🔨	Stop frac (Sample Appl)
SEHC9J2DP3JD\UNICORN\I	JNL			Wash
🗷 🚞 Adam		5/18/2009 1:23:0	Def	Stop frac (Column Wash)
😑 📄 Anne		5/18/2009 1:22:4	Def	Start frac (Elution) Single step gradient
DADCS NickelColumn	SystemC	6/4/2009 2:04:58	Def	Stop frac (Elution)
🗷 🛅 Bridget		5/18/2009 1:22:5	Def	Equilibrate_1
🗉 🛅 Charlie		5/18/2009 1:23:1	Def	Call from
🗉 🛅 Christine		5/18/2009 1:23:0	Def	METHOD SETTINGS
📧 🛅 David E		5/18/2009 1:23:3	Def	Call at
🗷 🛅 David T		5/18/2009 1:23:2	Def	0.00 CV
📧 📋 DefaultHome		9/25/2008 1:07:1	Sys	Block name
				Start frac (Column Wash)

or

- right-click the instruction line and choose Paste or
  - or
- select Edit:Paste (Ctrl+V)

Result: A **Rename** dialog opens.

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.2 Working with phases and blocks

Step	Action					
3	Click	<b>/es</b> to rename the block after insertion				
	A new the vc	v block is created. The variables in the block will get new names so riable values can be changed without affecting the original block.				
	or					
	Click I	<b>Vo</b> to just insert the copied block with the same name.				
	The bl variat origin	ock and variables names in the block are copied. If changing ble values in the pasted block, the values will be changed in the al block as well.				
	<i>Result</i> : Th	e block is inserted in position.				
	Note:	The pasted block is inserted with the same breakpoint value as the block or instruction selected for point of insertion. When a <i>Phase</i> is copied and pasted the <i>Rename</i> dialog is not opened.				

# Import blocks

The table below describes how to import blocks from other methods:

Step	Action
1	Click the <i>Import Block</i> button.
	Result: The Import Block dialog opens.

2 Locate and select the method you wish to import the block from in the *Method* folder structure.

ethod				Select block
Folder name	System	Last modified	Cre 🔨	Stop frac (Sample Appl)
SEHC9J2DP3JD\UNICORN\UNI * CAdam		5/18/2009 1:23:0	Def	Wash Stop frac (Column Wash)
Anne		5/18/2009 1:22:4	Def	Start frac (Elution) Single step gradient
DAOCS NickelColumn	SystemC	6/4/2009 2:04:58	Def	Stop frac (Elution)
🗷 🚞 Bridget		5/18/2009 1:22:5	Def	Equilibrate_1
🗷 🚞 Charlie		5/18/2009 1:23:1	Def	Call from
🗉 🛅 Christine		5/18/2009 1:23:0	Def	METHOD SETTINGS
🗷 🔚 David E		5/18/2009 1:23:3	Def	Call at
🗷 📋 David T		5/18/2009 1:23:2	Def	0.00 CV
🗉 📔 DefaultHome		9/25/2008 1:07:1	Sys 🥃	Block name
		E 100000 4 04 4	3	Start frac (Column Wash)

*Result*: All available blocks are listed in the *Select block* field.

3 Select a block to import from the method in the **Select block** list.

Step	Action
4	• Select the block where the imported block will be inserted in the <i>Call from</i> drop-down list.
	• Type the breakpoint that the imported block will be called at in the <i>Call at</i> text box.
	• If necessary, type a new name for the block in the <i>Block name</i> text box (optional).
5	• Click the <i>Import</i> button.
	Confirm if you also want to import sub-blocks (if any)
	Message       Image: Comparison of the sub-block of

*Result*: The block is imported into the method you are editing. Unless you have specified a breakpoint that is earlier, the block will be inserted at the end of the block that it is called from.

**Note:** If you are importing a block with the same name as a block that already is included in the method you are editing, a warning will open and you will be asked to confirm that you wish to replace the original block with that name in the method.

Import	Block
⚠	The method already contains a block with the name Start frac (Column Wash). Do you want to replace the existing block?

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.2 Working with phases and blocks

2

## **Move blocks**

Blocks can be moved by drag and drop within the method. You can also use *Cut* and *Paste* as described below:

Step	Action	
------	--------	--

- 1 Select the block you want to move.
  - click the *Cut* icon in the *Toolbar*



or

- right-click the block and choose *Cut* or
- select Edit:Cut
- Select the instruction line just above the point where you want the block to be moved.
  - click the *Paste* icon in the *Toolbar*



or

- right-click the instruction line and choose Paste or
- select Edit:Paste

*Result:* The block is now removed from its original breakpoint and pasted at the new breakpoint.

**Note:** The pasted block is inserted with the same breakpoint value as the block or instruction selected for point of insertion.

## **Rename blocks**

Action Step 1 Right-click the block in the text pane and select *Rename*. Cut Сору Delete Print Rename 5 Base ٠ Find Find Next Find Previous What's This? Result: The block name is highlighted in a box.

The table below describes how to rename a block:

2 Type in a new name.

**Note:** If the block you renamed is called in a *Block* or *Watch* instruction, the block name in these instructions will be changed automatically.

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.2 Working with phases and blocks

2

# **Delete blocks**

The table below describes how to delete a block:

Step	Ac	tion
1	•	Right-click a block and choose <b>Delete</b> . or
	•	Select a block and click <i>Delete</i> in the <i>Instruction box</i> .
		or

• Select a block and press the **Delete** key on the keyboard.

*Result*: A dialog will appear asking if the block should be deleted permanently or moved to unused blocks.

	*1.11.1	
	or be moved to the < linused section in the method	oa,
-	or be moved to the condised/section in the method.	
	Delete Move to <unused> Cancel</unused>	

**Note:** If deleting a phase, the phase will be deleted right away.

- Click **Delete** to delete the block permanently.
- Click *Move to <Unused>* to delete the block from the method and place it after the method.

# 9.2.3 Working with text instructions

# Introduction

Instead of editing the method in the *Phase Properties* pane, instructions may be edited one at a time in the *Text Instructions* pane. The instructions in a block are always executed sequentially. This section describes the general principles for how to edit instructions.

# Help texts for the instructions

It is possible to display help texts for the instructions that can be inserted in the *Instruc-tion Box*.

The table below describe how to display the help text for an instruction:

#### Step Action

- 1 In the *Instruction Box*, select the appropriate instruction for which to display help text.
- 2 Press **F1** on the keyboard.
  - Result: A dialog with help text for the selected instruction will be displayed.

#### Insert a new instruction

The table below describes how to insert a new text instruction in the *Text Instructions* area:

Step	Action
1	Select a block and display the instructions within the block.
2	Select the instruction in the block after which you want to add the new in- struction.

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.3 Working with text instructions

Step	Action
3	Open the Instruction Box if it is hidden. Do the following:
	• Set the appropriate breakpoint in the <i>Breakpoint</i> box.

- Choose the instruction type and the instruction in the *Instructions* field. For basic help on each instruction, select the instruction and press **F1**.
- Type values for instruction parameters in the *Parameters* text boxes.

The allowed range is shown in brackets beside the text box. If a scroll bar appears at the right side of the *Parameters* field, additional parameters are available.

reakpoint 0.00 CV Var	Instructions: Pumps and pressures System New Saraple flow Gradient Pump wash System wash Wash flow BufferPro petting Crost bet pressure flow		Parameters for System flow Flow rate         [0.000 - 25.000]           Var         0.500 ± ml/min           Pressure control         Var           Uff         V
Insert Char	<ul> <li>€ Flow path</li> <li>Monitors</li> <li>Monitors</li> <li>Monitors</li> <li>Belate</li> </ul>	~	Edit Vanable ) Import Block

Click the *Insert* button.

4

*Result*: The instruction will be inserted in the block:

- at the position of the breakpoint of the new instruction, if there are no other instructions at that breakpoint
- immediately after the currently highlighted instruction, if the highlight is at the same breakpoint as the new instruction
- as the last instruction at the breakpoint, if there are several instructions at the same breakpoint and none of these is highlighted.
- Note: Once a method has been edited in text editing mode, the phases affected by the edited instruction are indicated with the letter "T", and the *Phase Properties* pane changes to show a variable list, as shown below. To restore the *Phase Properties* again you can click the *Restore Phase Properties* button to return the method to the state before the text edit. Any changes that were made in the *Text Instructions* pane will be removed. New phases from the *Phase Library* may be inserted in the method after text editing and the settings for these new phases can be edited in the *Phase Properties* pane or *Text Instructions* pane.

#### 9 Text edit methods 9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane 9.2.3 Working with text instructions

Method Settings	(This phase has been text ed	Equilibration 17 (This phase has been test-edited)				
Equilibration	Phase Variables					
115.11 115.11	Block	Variable	Value	Range		
•	EQUILIBRATION	Inlet A	A1	*		
Sample Application		Inlet B	B1	*		
53 S/A	EQUILIBRATION	Percent B (Equilibration) (18)	0.00	[0.00 - 100.00]		
	EQUILIBRATION	Flow rate (ml/min)	1.000	[0.000 - 25.000]		
		Pressure control	Pre column pressure	~		
Column Wash	EQUILIBRATION	Fill system (Equilibration) (ml)	15	(10 - 999)		
•	Equibrate	Equilibration volume (CV)	5.00	[0.00 - 999999.0		
Elution						
•						
Column Wash						
•						
Equilibration				C		
	anow decars			E dit Variable		
	<					

# Change or replace an instruction

The table below describes how to edit instructions in the *Text Instructions* area:

Step	Action
1	Select an instruction in the text method.
	<i>Result</i> : The current <i>Breakpoint</i> and parameters for the selected instruction is displayed in the <i>Instruction Box</i> .

2 Edit or select parameter values in the *Instruction Box*:



9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.3 Working with text instructions

Step	Action						
3	To add th ing butto	ne edited or a new instruction to the method, click one of the follow- ons:					
	• Insei	rt -					
	• Char	nge					
	• Replace						
	Note:	The <b>Insert</b> button adds the edited instruction immediately below the instruction that was selected in the method.					
		The <b>Change</b> and <b>Replace</b> buttons are equivalent unless changes are made to the breakpoint or gradient length. Both buttons re- place the highlighted instruction with the newly edited instruction. The differences are explained below.					

# Effects of the Change button and the Replace button on breakpoints

The table below describes the difference in function between the *Change* and *Replace* buttons when changing breakpoints:

Button	Function
Change	This button shifts all subsequent instructions in the block according to the change in the breakpoint. <i>Change</i> does not affect the relative order of instructions in the method. You cannot change the breakpoint of an instruction to earlier than the nearest previous breakpoint in a block.
Replace	This button moves the selected instruction but does not change the breakpoint of any other instruction. <i>Replace</i> can change the relative order of instructions in the method.

# Effects of the Change button and the Replace button on gradient length

The *Length* parameter in the *Gradient* instruction affects the length of a gradient. The change will have different results depending on which button is used. The table below describes this:

Command	Function
Change	If this button is used to change the length of a gradient, the breakpoints for any instructions issued during the progress of the gradient will be adjusted proportionately so that they are always placed at the same relative posi- tion within the gradient. Instructions issued after the end of the gradient will be shifted by the amount of the change. Since the gradient works over time, any instruc- tion that you want to insert after a gradient should be placed after the combined breakpoint and gradient length. <b>Note:</b> Moving the <b>End_block</b> instruction in a gradient block with the <b>Change</b> button does not affect the length of the gradient.
Replace	If this button is used to change the length of a gradient, other instructions are not affected.

#### **Move instructions**

A selected instruction may be dragged-and-dropped in a new location to change the order of instructions. The symbol shown in the illustration below will be displayed if the instruction cannot be dropped in a specific location.



9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.3 Working with text instructions

# **Delete instructions**

The table below describes how to delete method instructions in the *Text Instructions* pane:

Step	Action
1	Select the instruction in the <i>Text Instructions</i> pane.
2	• Right-click the instruction and choose <i>Delete</i> . <i>or</i>
	• Click the <i>Delete</i> button in the <i>Instruction box</i> . <i>or</i>
	• Press the <b>Delete</b> key on your keyboard.

#### End\_Block instruction

If you delete the *End\_Block* instruction, the block will end at the last instruction in the block. If a gradient is currently being formed, the gradient will continue into the next block.

# 9.2.4 Method variables

# Introduction

Variables are used when you want to vary parameter values in a method. Variables must be defined when you want to:

• perform scouting and **Design of Experiments** (**DoE**) where different parameters are varied to find, for example, optimal settings for a process.

See Chapter 4 Scouting, on page 103 and Chapter 5 Design of Experiments, on page 116 for more information.

change parameter values in the *Start Protocol* immediately before the start of a
method run without using the *Method Editor*, allowing one method to be used for
runs under a variety of conditions. Each parameter defined as a variable is assigned
a default value, which is used if no changes are made to variable values at the start
of a run.

For information about how to change variable values in the **Start Protocol**, see ÄKTA avant and UNICORN 6.1 User Manual.

# Viewing method variables

All variables in a method are listed on the **Variable List** tab in the **Method and Duration** dialog, grouped according to the phase and block in which they appear. For information about how to view the variables in a method, see *View and print the method duration time and variables, on page 60* for more information.

If the method has been text edited the phase variables for the selected phase will be displayed in the *Phase Properties* pane. If the *Method Settings* phase has been edited, some additional parameters (e.g., enabling of *BufferPro* and *Column Logbook* settings) will also be displayed. It is possible to edit variable names, values and the other settings displayed in the *Phase Properties* pane.

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.4 Method variables

	(This phase has been test-edited.) Column selection Result Name & Locar				
Equilibration i T	Show by technique Ani	on Exchange 😽		Start Protoco	
Eddingramon 1.	Column Properties		Ē	Method Notes	
*	Block	Variable	Value	Range	
Sample Application	Main	Column	Any	v	
	METHOD SETTINGS	Pre column pressure limit (MPa)	20.00	10:02 - 20	00]
*		Delta column pressure limit (MPa)	20.00	10.02 - 20	00]
Caluma Wash		Column position	Bypass	*	
Column wash	METHOD SETTINGS	Inlet A	A1	*	
-		Inlet B	B1	*	
		Flow rate (ml/min)	1.000	10.000 - 2	5.000]
Elution		Pressure control	Pre column pressur		
*					
Column Wash					
٧	-				
Equilibration					
	Show details			Edit Varia	ble
	Enable automatic butter prepar	ation (ButterPro)	Column Logbook		
	Reope AIEX mar 0 1M NaCI - I	H 5883 P01 👻	Enable logging of		
	DutterPro Properties.	dicomponent buffers	Column Performance	r Test	

# Identifying variables in the Text Instructions area

Parameters that are defined as variables in the text method are indicated in the *Text Instructions* area.

The parameter is given as the default value in parentheses followed by the variable name. The illustration below shows an example of this:

🚊 📘 0.00 Phase Equilibration

- 0.00 Base SameAsMain
- 0.00 Pump A inlet (A1)#Inlet A
- 0.00 Pump B inlet (B1)#Inlet B
- 0.00 Gradient (0.00)#Percent B for equilibration {%B}, 0.00 {base}
- 0.00 System flow (1.000)#Flow rate {ml/min}, (No)#Use pressure control, 0.010 {ml/min}
- 0.00 System wash (25)#SystemWashVolume {ml}, Dutlet valve
- 0.00 Watch UV parameters 0.00 {mAU}, 0.10 {mAU}
- 0.00 Hold until UV 1, Stable signal, 0.10 {min}, Infinite {base}
- 0.00 Auto zero UV
- 🗄 📒 0.00 Block Equilibrate

For example, in (1.000)#Flow rate {ml/min}:

- (1.000) is the default value for the variable
- {ml/min} is the variable unit
- Flow rate is the variable name

# Identifying variables in the Instruction Box

Parameters that are defined as variables in the text method are also indicated in the *Instruction Box* for the selected instruction in the *Text Instructions* area.

When the instruction is shown in the *Instructions* field of the *Instruction box*, the *VAR...* button beside the parameter field is displayed in capital letters for variables (that is: *VAR...* not *Var...*).

Instruction Box					ņ
Breakpoint	Instructions:	D			
0.00 CV	Pumps and pressures     Flow path		Position		
Var	Injection valve	VAR.	By-pass	×	
	Column position	7	Flow Direction		
	Inlet B	Var	Own flow	O Up flow	
	pH valve Sample inlet Outlet valve Injection mark				
Insert Char	nge Replace Delete				
				Edit Variable Import Block	

#### Variable name conventions

Variables are defined with names that can be explicit descriptions of the variable function, for example *Sample volume* and *Gradient length*. Suitable choices of variable names can make the method easier to read and understand, and also help the operator in setting variable values at the start of a method run.

When defining and/or renaming variables, consider the following:

- The names can be up to 50 characters long and the following characters can be used:
  - Letters (A-Z)
  - Digits (0-9)
  - The underscore character (\_)
  - The Space character
- The case of letters is retained, but not significant. The names *Flow Rate* and *FLOW RATE* are treated as identical.

For information about defining and renaming variables, see *Define new variables*, on page 318 and *Edit variables*, on page 320.

9 Text edit methods9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane9.2.4 Method variables

# **Define new variables**

1

Only one variable that affects block length (breakpoint or gradient length) may be defined within each block. However, any number of parameters may be defined as variables within a block. The table below describes how to define a new variable.

#### Step Action

Select the instruction where you want to define the variable in the **Text Instructions** area.

*Result*: The parameters for the instruction are shown in the *Instruction box*.

		>
ons: mps and pressures mps and pressures presiden valve Column porition Intel A pri valve pri valve Sample rulet Qualet valve Injection mark. princetion sation collection	Parameters for Outlet valve Position Var Out-Waste	
	Imps and pressures we path Injection valve Column position Indet A pH valve Sample indet Outlet valve Injection mark: onitors action collection Replace Delete	Ingelion valve Column position Inde 8 pdf valve Sample rifet Dualet valve Ingelion valve Column position Inde 8 pdf valve Sample rifet Dualet valve Ingelion valve Freglione Teelion Inde 8 Pdf valve Sample rifet Dualet valve Ingelion valve Dualet valve Ingelion valve Dualet valve Dualet valve Dualet valve Dualet valve Dualet valve

#### Step Action

2

- Locate the breakpoint or the required parameter in the *Instruction box*.
  - Click the Var... button.

− 0.00 C     − 0.00 C     − 0.00 C     − 0.00 I     − 0.00 P     − 0.00 Pha     − 0.00 Pha	Jutiet valve: Duk-Waste Column position: (By-pass)IIColu M valve: (In-inite)IpM toll, (In- M valve: In-inite)IpM toll, (In- net 8: (B) Jilintet 8 system flow: (L.000)IFflow rate :nd Block se: Rubico Elution se: Califibration se: Califibration se: Califibration se: Califibration se: Califibration se: Califibration	n position, Down flow )  F Cow restrictor ensor alarm on inlet valve A, [Enabled]  Air sensor alarm on inle  /min}, [Pre column pressure]   Pressure control	t volve B, (Disabled)#Air se
Breakpoint	Instructions: Pumps and pressures Pumps and pressures Column position Link Column position Link 4 pH valve Sample ridet Didet valve Injection mark Monitors Monitors	Parameter for Dulle value Position Dul-Waste	<u>×</u>

Result: The New Variable dialog opens.

New Varia	ble		
Variable na	me:		
Visible i	n details only		
	ОК	Cancel	Clear

- 3
- Type a name for the variable (see *Variable name conventions, on page 317* for information about how to name variables).
- Select the Visible in details only check box if you want to set the variable as a "details" variable. Detail variables become visible in the Variable List if the Show details check box is selected. This option can be used to simplify the workflow later.
- Click OK.

*Result:* The *Var...* button changes to *VAR...* to confirm the new variable.

Note: If a breakpoint or gradient length is defined as a variable, changing the variable value in the *Variable List* tab when the method run is started will shift other instruction breakpoints accordingly. This functionality is equivalent to using the *Change* button to alter a breakpoint or gradient length (see *Section 9.2.3 Working with text instructions, on page 309* for how the *Change* button affects instructions within gradients).

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.4 Method variables

Step	Action
4	Click <b>Change</b> .
	<i>Result:</i> The variable is saved and displayed in the <i>Text Instructions</i> area.

# **Edit variables**

Editing a variable includes renaming and deleting the variable and choosing whether the variable should be a detailed variable or not. For information about how to edit the variable values, see *Edit variable values*, on page 324.

#### Edit a variable using the Edit variable button

The table below describes how to edit a variable using the *Edit Variable* button:

Step	Action
------	--------

1

• In the Instruction Box, click Edit Variable....

reakpoint	Instructions:	Par	amotoro for Column position		
0.00 Cv Var	Plumps and pressures     Flow path     Injection valve     Column position     Inlet A     Inlet B     pH valve     Sample inlet     Outlet valve     Injection mark     Monitors     Fraction collection		Position Position Bypass Flow Direction flow Direction flow	O Up flow	<b>•</b>
Insert Ch	ange Replace Delete				

• Alternatively, if the phase containing the variable has been text edited, select the *Phase Properties* tab to display the phase variables, select the variable and click *Edit Variable...*.

method betangs	(This phase has been test edit	ed.)			
Equilibration	T Phase Variables				
	Block	Variable	Value		Range
•	EQUILIBRATION	Inlet A	A1	~	
Sample Application		Inlet B	81	×	
Campie Appression	EQUILIBRATION	Percent B (Equilbration) (18)	0.00		[0.00 - 100.00]
	EQUILIBRATION	Flow rate (mi/min)	1.000		[0.000 - 25.000]
		Pressure control	Pre column pressure	×	
Column Wash	EQUILIBRATION	Fill system (Equilibration) (ml)	15		(10 - 999)
	Equibrate	Equilibration volume (CV)	5.00		[0.00 - 999999.0]
Elution					
•					
Column Wash					
¥					
Equilibration	Chana dataka				Contractory (
	- STRAW GROAD				E dr váriable

*Result:* The *Edit Variable* dialog opens displaying all variables (if opened from the *Text Instructions* pane) or the phase variables (if opened from the *Phase Properties* tab).

9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane

9.2.4 Method variables

#### Step Action

2

Select the variable to be edited (if not already selected). Do one or several of the following as appropriate:



- Type in a new name in the *New name* field and click *Rename*.
- Check the **Set visible in details only** if the variable should be a detailed variable. Uncheck the box to set it to a normal variable.
- Click *Delete* to delete the variable.

Confirm that you want to delete the variable in the dialog that appears.

3 Click *Close* to close the dialog.

#### Edit a variable using the VAR.. button in the Instruction Box

The table below describes how to edit a variable using the Instruction Box:

#### Step Action

#### 1 Select the instruction containing the variable to be edited in the **Text Instruc***tions* area.

Result: The parameters for the instruction are shown in the Instruction box.

	Base: SameAsMain Inlet A: (A1)#Inlet A Inlet B: (B1)#Inlet B Gradient: (0.00)#Percent B (Equ System (10.00)#Flow rate { System wash. [15)#Fill system (E Block: Equilibrate_1 End_Block	ilibration)_1 {% ml/min}, (Pre quilibration)_1	\$8}, 0.00 {base} column pressure}#Press {mi}, Outlet valve	ure control	
nstruction Box Ireakpoint	Instructions:	Par	analasa far Sustan wordt		1
0.00 🕄 CV	Europs and pressures     System flow     Sample flow     Gradent     Purap weath     Vach flow     BufferPo pH     BufferPo pH     BufferPo ptH     BufferPo and pressure flow     Effore path     Constant pressure flow     Enorpath     Manifers		Wash volume Wash volume R Wash flow path to C	[10 - 393] 15 🚆 ml 🗌 Off 🔿 Injection valve	

#### 2 Click the **VAR...** button for the appropriate variable.

Result: The Edit Variable dialog opens.

Edit Varial	ble		X
Variable na	me:		
Fill system (	(Equilibration)		
Visible in	n details only		
0	ОК	Cancel	Clear

- 3 Do one or several of the following as appropriate:
  - Type in a new name in the Variable name field.
  - Check the *Visible in details only* if the variable should be a detailed variable. Uncheck the box to set it to a normal variable.
  - Click *Clear* to delete the variable.

#### 4 Click OK.

5 To save the changes, click *Change* in the *Instruction Box*.

*Result:* The text instruction is updated.

9 Text edit methods9.2 Working with methods in the Text Instructions pane9.2.4 Method variables

# Edit variable values

To edit default variable values, you can either

- edit the value in the *Phase Properties* tab if the text method has been edited. *or*
- edit the instruction in the Instruction box of the Text Instructions.

Changes made in the *Phase Properties* tab are automatically updated on the *Text Instructions* tab and vice versa.

#### Edit variable values in the phase variables list

If the phase containing the variable value to be edited has been text edited, it is possible to edit the variable value on the *Phase Properties* tab. The table below describes how to edit variable values in the *Phase Properties* tab for a text edited phase:

#### Step Action

1

Select the **Phase Properties** tab to display the **Phase Variables** list.

Method Settings	T (This phase has been text-edit	ed)		
Equilibration	T Phase Variables			
	Block	Variable	Value	Range
•	EQUILIBRATION	Inlet A	A1	*
nole Application		Inlet B	81	~
inter subtriction in	EQUILIBRATION	Percent B (Equilbration) (%B)	0.00	[0.00 - 100.00]
	EQUILIBRATION	Flow rate (mi/min)	1.000	[0.000 - 25.000
		Pressure control	Pre column pressure	~
Column Wash	EQUILIBRATION	Fill system (Equilbration) (ml)	15	[10 - 999]
	Equibrate	Equilibration volume (CV)	5.00	10.00 - 999999
Elution				
•	-			
olumn Wash				
•	_			
Equilibration	0			
E danne anon	Show details			Edit Variable

Change the variable value for the appropriate variable in the *Value* field by choosing a new value in the drop-down list or typing in the field.
 Tip: To show detailed variables, check the *Show details* box.

*Result:* The variable value is updated.

3 Repeat this procedure for the appropriate variables.

#### Edit variable values in the Instruction Box

The table below describes how to edit variable values in the *Instruction Box*:
#### Step Action

1 Select the instruction containing the variable value to be edited in the *Text Instructions* area.

*Result*: The parameters for the instruction are shown in the *Instruction box*.

C.00 Pha O.00 Pha O.00 Pha O.00	sse: Column Wash sse: Equilibration Base: SameAsMain Inlet A: (A1)#Inlet A Inlet B: (B1)#Inlet B Gradient (10.00)#Ffore tB (Equilib System Mash: (1.000)#Ffore rate (ml System Wash: (1.5)#Ffill system (Equ Block: Equilibrate_1 End_Block	oration_1 (%8), 0.00 (base) /min), (Pre column pressure)#Pressure control ultibration_1 (m1), Outlet valve
Instruction Box		<b>P</b>
Breakpoint	Instructions: System flow Sample flow Gradient Pump wash System weash Wash flow BufferPro pH BufferPro pH BufferPro pH BufferPro pH BufferPro pH	Parameters for System wash     Wash volume     (10 - 999)     VAR     Var     Outlet valve     Injection valve
Insert Cha	nge Replace Delete	Edit Variable Import Block

- 2 Change the value for the appropriate variable(s) (indicated by VAR...).
- 3 Click Change.

*Result*: The settings are saved and the text instruction updated in the *Text Instructions* area.

## 9.3 Specific instructions

## Introduction

This section describes some text instruction applications, for example:

- Gradient instructions
- Alarms
- Conditional instructions
- Messages, set marks, pause and hold instructions

## In this section

This section contains these sub-sections:

Section	See page
9.3.1 Gradients and eluent concentrations	327
9.3.2 Alarm instructions	330
9.3.3 Watch instructions	333
9.3.4 Pause or hold a method	340
9.3.5 Messages and Set marks	343

## 9.3.1 Gradients and eluent concentrations

## Introduction

**Gradient** instructions allow definition of an A- and B-buffer mix. The starting point for the **Gradient** is always the current eluent composition. The instruction can be read as follows: "form a **Gradient** to reach **Target** after **Length**". Linear gradients and step gradients can be created using **Gradient** instructions.

*Gradient* instructions are given in the *Text Instructions* editor of the *Method Editor*. This type of instruction defines gradients and immediate changes in eluent concentration.

### **Linear gradients**

A gradient can be defined as a linear gradient. The eluent composition changes linearly over time.

### **Example of instruction**

10.00 Gradient 50{%B}, 20{base}

The example instruction above forms a gradient to 50%B (*Target*) starting at breakpoint 10 with duration 20 method base units (*Length*). The example instruction will finish at breakpoint 30. If the current eluent concentration is greater than 50%, the gradient will be negative.

### **Step gradients**

A gradient can be defined in several steps. A step gradient is an immediate change in eluent composition. To form a step gradient, set the *Length* parameter to 0 in the *Gra-dient* instruction.

#### **Example of instruction**

10.00 Gradient 50{%B}, 0{base}

The example instruction above forms a step from the current eluent composition to 50%B at breakpoint 10. The method continues with 50%B.

## Insert a Gradient text instruction

The table below describes how to insert a *Gradient* instruction:

Step	Action
1	At a suitable <b>Breakpoint</b> in the method, select the instruction line immedi- ately before where you want to insert the gradient (this decides when the gradient begins).
2	• Expand the <i>Pumps and pressures</i> item in the <i>Instructions</i> field of the <i>Instruction Box</i> .
	Select Gradient.
	• In the <b>Parameters for Gradient</b> field, select appropriate values for:
	- <b>Target</b> (final eluent composition expressed in % eluent B)
	- Length (duration of the gradient)

- Tip: To form a step gradient, set the *Length* parameter to zero.
- **Tip:** For many purposes, it can be useful to define the length of the gradient as a variable. When this is done, breakpoints for instructions issued during or after the gradient in the same block are automatically shifted in proportion to the length of the gradient when the variable value is changed. This is the same functionality as the *Change* button command in the *Instruction Box*.

reakpoint 0.00 € CV Var	Instructions: Pumps and pressures System flow Sample flow Gradent Pump wash System wash Wash flow BufferPro ptH BufferPro ptH Buff	arameters for Gradient Target (AR) Length Var	[0.00 - 100.00] 100.00] ∰ %8 [0.00 - 100000.0] 0.00] ∰ CV
Insert Cha	nge Replace Delete		Edit Variable Import Bloc

Step	Action	
3	Edit the <b>Breakpoint</b> for the gradient, if appropriate.	
	<b>Note:</b> The breakpoint for a <i>Gradient</i> instruction defines the time of volume (according to method base) for the start of the gradient A gradient with a non-zero duration occupies time and volue in the method, and breakpoints for other instructions may be to occur before the gradient is completed. The instruction is simply carried out at the requested breakpoint, while the gradient is forming.	or ient. ime e set s dient
4	Click the <i>Insert</i> button.	

*Result*: The new *Gradient* instruction is inserted in the method in the *Text Instructions* area.

## Instruction after a gradient

Any instruction that you want to insert after a gradient should be placed after the combined breakpoint and gradient length, since gradients function over time.

## Instructions that affect gradients

The table below describes the instructions that affect the gradient:

Instruction	Effect
Gradient	A new gradient will start at the requested breakpoint. The remaining duration of any previous gradient is ignored.
Flow	The eluent flow rate will change at the requested break- point. If the current base is volume or column volume, the duration of the gradient will be changed. If the method base is time, the volume of the gradient will be changed. <b>Note:</b> If the flow is changed, the slope of the gradient will also change.
End_Block	The gradient formation will continue uninterrupted unless a new <b>Gradient</b> instruction is issued. For example, this means that a block can be called conditionally during gradient formation without interrupting the gradient.

## 9.3.2 Alarm instructions

## Introduction

This section is a description of how alarms work in UNICORN and of the *Alarms* text instructions. It also describes the differences between *Alarms* and *Warnings*.

### **Alarms and Warnings**

The **Alarms** parameter settings define the high and low **Alarm** limits for process monitor signals. You can define these limits either in the system settings or as part of a method. Settings in the method will override the system settings.

The limits that will generate a *Warning* from the system are defined in the instrument configuration files and you cannot edit these settings.

Conditions can also be applied to process monitor signals such that a block of instructions will execute when a particular condition is satisfied (for example, when the absorbance of the eluent exceeds a certain limit). This is done using **Watch** instructions which are described in *Section 9.3.3 Watch instructions, on page 333*.

The table below describes the general difference between *Alarms* and *Warnings*.

If the signal exceeds	then
Alarm limits	• an alarm sounds
	an alarm message is displayed
	<ul> <li>the process is paused (i.e., the method execution is suspended and all pumps are stopped)</li> </ul>
	• the alarm is noted in the <i>Run log</i> .
	The situation must be acknowledged and corrected before the process can be continued.
Warning limits	• a warning message is displayed
	the process continues
	• the warning is noted in the <i>Run log</i> .

Note: The *Alarms* are not active unless the mode is set to *Enabled*.

### Alarms in a network

*Alarms* and warning messages are displayed on all stations with a connection to the concerned system. This is regardless of the activity that is currently performed in UNICORN and regardless of the identity and access rights of the current user.

Alarms and warnings can however only be acknowledged from the station that is connected in control mode.

### Insert an Alarm text instruction

The table below describes how to insert an alarm instruction into the method.

Step	Action
1	Select the instruction line immediately before where you want to insert the <i>Alarm</i> , at a suitable <i>Breakpoint</i> in the method.
	(This will decide when the alarm conditions begin.)
2	• Select <i>Alarms</i> in the <i>Instructions</i> field of the <i>Instruction Box</i> .
	Select the desired alarm from the list.
3	Select appropriate values for <i>High alarm</i> and for <i>Low alarm</i> in the <i>Param</i> - <i>eters</i> field.

Breakpoint Instructions: □ 0.00 <sup>+</sup> / <sub>2</sub> CV <sup>-</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Flow path <sup>-</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Parameters for Alarm system pressure Mode	Instruction Box		
Var     ****     Fraction collection       *****     Alarms     [0.02***********************************	Breakpoint	Instructions: Compath Monitors Fraction collection Alarm sample pressure Alarm sample pressure Alarm pre column pressure Alarm pre column pressure Alarm other column Alarm other	Parameters for Alarm system pressure           Mode           Var.         Disabled           Var.         20.00 ± MPe           Low alarm         10.02 ± 20.00]           Var.         0.00 ± MPe           Low alarm         10.00 ± MPe

- **Note:** There are no high and low settings for *Air sensors*, only enabled or disabled.
- 4 Click the *Enabled* radio button.
- 5 Click the *Insert* button.

Result: The new Alarm instruction is inserted in the method.

# 9 Text edit methods9.3 Specific instructions9.3.2 Alarm instructions

## Available alarms

The alarms available depend on the instrument configuration. Alarms for the following monitor readings may be set:

- System pressure
- Sample pressure
- Delta column pressure
- Pre-column pressure
- UV1
- Conductivity
- pH
- Air sensors

## 9.3.3 Watch instructions

## Introduction

*Watch* instructions allow the progress of a method run to be determined by events during the method run. For example, start collecting fractions when the first peak elutes.

The *Instrument Configuration* files include *Watch* instructions for each monitor defined in the system. These instructions are used to monitor method runs, and instruct the system to call a specified block or an instruction when a particular signal meets a given condition. As long as the condition is not met, the block is not activated.

**Note:** Watch instructions available for the instrument configuration are listed in the Instruction box.

### When is a Watch active?

The breakpoint when the *Watch* instruction is issued determines when the watch begins, not when the block is activated.

A watch is active from the point at which it is issued until:

- the *Watch* condition is met.
- a new watch is set for the same monitor.
- a *Watch off* instruction is issued for the monitor. or
- the method ends.

## Insert a Watch text instruction

The table below describes how to insert a watch instruction in the text method. Setting up additional Watch parameters is described afterwards, see *Insert a Watch parameters instruction, on page 337*.

Step	Action
1	At a suitable <b>Breakpoint</b> in the method, select the instruction line immedi- ately before where you want to insert the watch (this decides when the watch begins).

### 9 Text edit methods

9.3 Specific instructions

9.3.3 Watch instructions

Step	Action	
2	• expand <i>Watch</i> in the <i>Instructions</i> field.	
	• select the desired <i>Watch</i> type:	
	- Hold until	
	Subsequent instructions in the block will execute when the condition have been met	วทร
	<ul> <li>Watch</li> <li>A specified action will be performed when the conditions have be met</li> </ul>	en
	- Watch off Cancels the watch on the specified signal	
	Breakpoint Instructions: Pumps and pressures Var Parameters for Watch Signal UV 1 Test Alarms Watch parameters Watch charameters Watch charameters	
	Watch     Var     0.0 mAU       Watch off     Watch off     Action       B Dther     Var     Eguilbrate	

Select a signal for the watch from the Signal drop-down menu.
 See Monitor signals to watch, on page 335 for available signals that can be selected.

4 For watch types *Hold until* or *Watch*, select the appropriate *Parameters for Watch*:

• Test

See *Test options in the Parameters field, on page 335* for a description of the different **Test** options.

- Value/Slope/Minutes/Factor depending on the selected test
- select an appropriate Action.

Insert Change Replace Delete

See Actions when a Watch condition is met, on page 336 for a description of the different **Watch Action** options.

Step	Action		
5	Click the <i>Insert</i> button.		
	<ul> <li>Result: The new Watch instruction is inserted in the Text Instructions area.</li> <li>Note: A Watch off instruction can be added to the method at a breakpoint where the watch no longer is needed.</li> </ul>		
Note:	Watch parameters may be set as variables so that the method easily can be adjusted for different run conditions.		

## Monitor signals to watch

The monitor signals that can be watched differ depending on the *Instrument Configuration* but may include the following:

- pH
- Cond
- UV (1,2 and 3)
- Pressure (System, Sample, Pre-column and Delta-column)
- Flow (System and sample)
- Air sensor (System pump A and B, sample pump)

The buffer concentration may also be set as a watch parameter.

## Test options in the Parameters field

The table below describes the **Test** options that are available for the **Watch** instruction in the **Parameters for Watch** field:

Option	Explanation	
Greater than	The signal exceeds a certain value.	
Less than	The signal falls below a specified value.	
Slope greater than	The rate of change of the signal exceeds a specified value, expressed in monitor units/minute (for example, mAU/min).	
Slope less than	The rate of change of the signal falls below a specified value, expressed in, for example, mAU/min.	

Option	Explanation
Less than or valley	The signal falls below a specified value or a valley is detected. A valley is detected only after a <b>Peak max</b> has been detected, and the valley is defined by a local minimum followed by an increase to 102% of the local minimum value plus the <b>Delta</b> <b>peak</b> value (see <i>The Delta peak setting, on page 338</i> ).
Peak max	The signal falls to a specified fraction of the most recent peak maximum minus the <b>Delta peak</b> value.
Stable signal	The signal is stable, within the accepted fluctuation given by the relevant <b>Watch parameters</b> instruction (see <i>Insert a Watch</i> <i>parameters instruction, on page 337</i> ), for the period specified by the minutes parameter.
Equals	Air sensor test parameter, explained below.

**Note:** In order to set a valid slope value, use the *Differentiate* function in the *Evaluation* module to measure the slope of the test chromatogram.

## Actions when a Watch condition is met

The selection in the *Action* drop-down list will determine what happens when the condition of a Watch instruction is met. The table below describes the possible actions:

Instruction	Effect	
Block name	Calls the named block. Note: All available method blocks are listed in alpha- betical order in the drop-down list, before the general actions which are listed below.	
Continue	Continues the method if paused or held.	
End_block	Ends the current block and return to the point from which the block was called.	
Hold	Holds the method, the flow continues. See <i>Hold instruction, on page 340</i> .	
End_method	Ends the method.	
Next_breakpoint	Indicates that the run may execute the next breakpoint.	

Instruction	Effect
Pause	Pauses the method, the flow is stopped. See <i>Pause instruc-</i> <i>tion, on page 340.</i>

## Insert a Watch parameters instruction

*Watch parameters* instructions are used to define accepted limits and fluctuations for a signal in a *Watch* instruction. *Watch parameters* instructions should therefore be inserted just before the *Watch* instruction on which the limits are required.

- 1 Select the instruction line immediately before the *Watch* instruction to which the parameters will apply.
- Expand Watch parameters in the Instructions field of the Instruction Box.
  - Select the desired watch parameters from the list.
  - Select appropriate values for the *Accepted fluctuation* and *Delta peak* (for the *Watch UV parameters* and *Watch cond parameters* instructions) in the *Parameters* field.

For information about the **Delta peak** setting and how to use it, see *The Delta peak* setting, on page 338.



3 Click the *Insert* button.

*Result:* The new *Watch parameters* instruction is inserted in the method in the text area.

## The Delta peak setting

The *Delta peak* setting in the *Watch parameters* helps the software to detect valleys, peaks and peak maxima, and to filter noise in the chromatogram.

The Delta peak value should be set

- large enough so that signal noise does not activate the conditions and
- small enough so that the condition is activated close to the valley or peak.

As a general guideline, set the value to 2-3 times the noise level and 5-10% of the smallest expected peak height. If you set a too high value you can prevent a new peak from being detected after a local minimum.

### Use of the Delta peak setting

The Delta peak setting in the Watch parameters

 sets the threshold for signal increase after a local minimum that will be interpreted as a valley for the *Less than or valley* condition. A valley and a new peak are detected when the signal increases to 102% of the local minimum plus the *Delta peak* value.
 Note: A valley is detected only after a *Peak max* has been detected.

Example:

If there is a local minimum at 50 mAU and a *Delta peak* of 10 mAU, a valley will be detected at:

 $(1.02 \times 50) + 10 = 61 \text{ mAU}$ 

 sets the threshold for signal decrease after a local maximum that will activate the *Peak max* condition. *Peak max* is detected when the signal falls to the specified fraction of the most recent peak maximum minus the *Delta peak* value.

The schematic figure below illustrates the *Delta peak* setting where *Peak max* is detected when the signal falls by *Delta peak* from a local maximum if the *Peak max Factor* is set to 1 in *Watch:Watch:Parameters for Watch*:



## Watch test parameter for air sensors

Two *Watch* conditions are available for air sensors. The table below describes the conditions and their explanations:

Equals	Explanation
No air	No air detected.
Air	Air detected.

**Note:** To use the *Watch* parameters for an air sensor, the corresponding *Alarm air sensors* setting must be disabled.

## 9.3.4 Pause or hold a method

## Introduction

A method can be programmed to be delayed at critical points. There are three instructions for this purpose: *Pause*, *Hold* and *Hold until*. These instructions are described below.

### **Pause instruction**

The *Pause* instruction suspends execution of the method and stops the pumps so that the system comes to a standstill. The valves remain in the position they were in before the pause.

The pause may be defined as *Infinite* or for a specified number of minutes.

#### **Resume the method**

It is possible to define the pause time for the method in the *Pause* instruction. The method will continue when the set time has elapsed.

The method may also be resumed if you click the **Continue** icon on the **System Control** toolbar:



Note:

If the pause is set to Infinite, the method must be resumed manually by clicking the **Continue** icon.

## **Hold instruction**

The *Hold* instruction suspends the execution of the method, but continues to pump eluent at the current flow rate and concentration settings. For example, this instruction is useful for giving the operator time to load a sample loop.

### **Resume the method**

The method may be resumed if you click the *Continue* icon on the *System Control* toolbar:



Note:

With the *Hold* instruction, the method must always be resumed manually by clicking the *Continue* icon.

## **Hold until instruction**

The *Hold until* instruction is a special kind of *Watch* instruction. The method is put on hold until a specific condition is met (*Signal*, *Test* or *Value*) or the *Timeout* is reached. Thereafter the remaining instructions in the method are executed. See *Section 9.3.3 Watch instructions, on page 333* for a description of *Watch* instructions.

## Insert a Pause, Hold or Hold until instruction

The table below describes how to insert a Pause, Hold or Hold until instruction:

Step	Action
1	At a suitable <b>Breakpoint</b> in the method, select the instruction line immedi- ately before where you want to insert the <b>Pause</b> , <b>Hold</b> or <b>Hold until</b> instruc- tion (this decides when the instruction begins).

2 To insert a *Hold* instruction, select *Other:Hold* in the *Instructions* field of the *Instruction Box*.

Instruction Box		
Instruction Box Breakpoint 0.00 CV Var	Instructions: Block Continue End Block End Evaluate Hold	Parameters for Hold
Insert Cha	Loop End Loop Message New chromatogram Pause Ready Control Belate	
		Edit Variable

3 To insert a *Pause* instruction, select *Other:Pause* and enter the *Time* for the method to be paused in the *Time* field. To pause the method for infinite time, check the *Infinite* box.

reakpoint	Instructions:			
0.00 🗐 CV	Block Continue End Block End Loop End Loop Message New chromatogram Pause Ready	Parameters for Pause Time Vor	(0.00 - 99 0.00) ≢ min	99.90)
Insert <u>C</u> ha	ange   <u>R</u> eplace   <u>D</u> elete			

### 9 Text edit methods

9.3 Specific instructions

9.3.4 Pause or hold a method

Step	Action
4	To insert a <i>Hold until</i> instruction:

- select Watch:Hold until in the Instructions field of the Instruction Box
- select the appropriate parameters for the *Hold until* instruction in the *Parameters for Hold until* area.

See Section 9.3.3 Watch instructions, on page 333 for descriptions of the available settings.

~
~
nfinite

5 Click the *Insert* button.

Result: The new instruction is inserted in the Text Instructions area.

**Note:** Instructions that share the same breakpoint as the *Hold until* instruction, but are placed after it in the method, will be executed after the *Hold until* conditions have been met.

## 9.3.5 Messages and Set marks

### When to use a message

Messages are used to inform the operator of the progress of the run or to prompt the user for an action. It is a good idea to issue messages at critical points in the method, for example, in combination with a *Pause* instruction to inform the operator that the inlet tube needs to be moved to another inlet.

### Insert a Message instruction

The **Message** instruction can be used to set up a message that will be displayed for the user during the execution of the method run. The message can be for information in a screen only, or it can require a signature before the user can control the system. The messages are all added to the logbook text.

The table below describes how to add a *Message* instruction to the method.

Step	Action

- Select **Other** in the **Instructions** field of the **Instructions box**.
  - Select *Message* in the instructions list.
- 2 Type a message in the **Message** text box in the **Parameters** field.

0.00 CV	End Evaluate Hold Loop End Loop Messape New chomatogram Pause Ready Set mark Snapshot Commerk		Parameters for Message Message Var Check fraction collector Mode Var Authorize Sound Default sound	v
---------	--	--	--	---

3

Select one of the display options on the **Mode** menu:

- Screen, that is, only a text message is displayed.
- **Noscreen**, that is, the message will not be displayed but only inserted into the logbook.
- **Authorize**, that is, the message will require a signature from the user before the user can interact with the system again.

9.3 Specific instructions

9.3.5 Messages and Set marks

Step	Action		
4	<ul> <li>Select a sound on the <i>Sound</i> menu if desired.</li> <li>Click the <i>Insert</i> button.</li> </ul>		
Note:	If the <b>Message</b> instruction is inserted in a conditional block it will only be displayed if the conditions of the block (for example a <b>Watch</b> ) is fulfilled.		

## When to use a Set mark

Set mark instructions are useful text messages. They can be used

- to highlight certain stages in a method
- to insert manual notes, for example, when a specific event occurs in a run (only in System Control)

*Set marks* differ from *Messages* in that they are inserted into the chromatogram at set points as well as into the logbook during a method run.

## Example of a Set mark

The illustration below shows an example where **Set marks** are used to highlight the start and end of fractionation in a method:



## Insert a Set mark

*Set marks* are inserted from the *Instructions box*. The table below describes how to do this:

Step	Action		
1	Select <b>Othe</b>	:Set mark in the Instructions field.	
	Instruction Box Breakpoint Int 0.00 CV Var	ructions: End Evaluate Hold Loop Message New chronotogram Pause Ready Set mark Snapshot Comment	

- 2 Type the message in the *Mark text* field.
- 3 Click the *Insert* button.

*Result*: A new line with the *Set mark* is added to the text method.

## 10 Troubleshooting

## Introduction

This chapter describes different problems which may arise when creating methods in UNICORN, and how to solve the problems. It also describes how to generate a system error report describing performance problems.

## In this chapter

This chapter contains these sections:

Section	See page
10.1 Troubleshooting methods	347
10.2 System Error Reports	353

## 10.1 Troubleshooting methods

## Introduction

This section describes how to solve the following method problems:

- The Phase Properties tab only shows a variables table
- You cannot find settings that you need in the *Phase Properties*
- There are red instructions in a method
- Breakpoints are not calculated correctly
- Volumes are smaller or larger than expected after a method is converted
- A column cannot be selected for scaling
- The Print Screen command does not send a copy of the screen to the printer
- Undefined inlets are used briefly for CIP or preparation phases

## The Phase Properties tab only shows a Phase Variables table

The table below describes how to restore the options and settings to the **Phase Properties** tab:

Problem description	Solution
The <i>Phase Properties</i> tab shows only a variables table and not the regular options and settings for the selected phase. The phase is marked with the letter "T" in the method outline.	The phase has been edited in the <b>Text Instruc-</b> tions tab. Click the <b>Restore Phase Properties</b> button to return to the default settings and re- store the <b>Phase Properties</b> options and settings. Note that if the text edited settings also involve subsequent phases and the general <b>Method</b> <b>Settings</b> , all these phases are changed as well and you must restore them all individually.

## Options are not available in the phase properties

The table below describes what to do if the standard settings available in the **Phase Properties** for a phase are not suitable for your specific application needs:

Problem description	So	lution
Options that you need are not avail- able for selection or editing in the <i>Phase Properties</i> .	•	Add a <b>User Defined</b> phase to the method and edit the properties in the <b>Text Instruc-</b> <i>tions</i> tab
		or
	•	Text edit the phase where the option is required.

## There are red instructions in a method

Red instructions (instructions with a red dot) in a method are syntax errors and may have several causes. A phase containing syntax errors is marked in the method outline with a red cross. The table below describes some solutions to syntax error problems:

Problem description	Solution
The method instructions do not corre- spond to the components you have chosen for your system.	Check your system components under <b>System Properties</b> in the <b>Administration</b> module and that the correct instrument configuration is selected.
Syntax errors are not corrected by changing the component configura-tion.	Close and reopen the method.

Problem description	Solution
Syntax errors appear because the method was connected to the wrong system. That is, the instrument config- uration of the system is incompatible with the method.	<ul> <li>Edit the method so it can be run on the currently chosen system. Red instructions must be removed.</li> <li>Save the method for a system that has all components installed. Note: The red instructions must be replaced.</li> <li>Reselect the required component under System Properties in the Administration module (if the component is actually present on the system). Reopen the method and replace the red instructions with the corresponding instruction for</li> </ul>
	the added component.
Syntax errors appear because the system's instrument configuration has been updated with a new instrument configuration that differs in the instruc- tion set.	Select the red instruction and either delete it or replace it with a corresponding instruc- tion (if available) from the <i>Instruction box</i> . Repeat this for all red instructions before saving the method.
Syntax errors appear because the method was converted for use with a system with a component set up differ from the component set up of the system for which the method was originlly created.	Select the red instruction and either delete it or replace it with a corresponding instruc- tion (if available) from the <i>Instruction box</i> . Repeat this for all red instructions before saving the method.
<ul> <li>A phase is marked as incorrect (with a red cross).</li> <li>This may appear if</li> <li>the instrument configuration has been changed</li> <li>components have been removed or</li> <li>the method was converted from a system with a different component set up</li> </ul>	Replace the phase with a compatible phase from the <b>Phase Library</b> . This phase will au- tomatically be adapted to the current instru- ment configuration and component set- tings.

## Breakpoints are not correctly calculated

The table below describes how to solve problems with calculation of breakpoints in the method, for example in the *Method Duration and Variables* dialog.

Problem description	Solution
Method breakpoints are not calcu- lated. All values are shown as zero.	If the method block uses volume or column volume base, the breakpoints are calculated from the pump flow rate. Check that the flow rate is not zero.

## A converted method generates unexpected results

The table below describes how to solve problems when a converted method generates unexpected results.

Problem description	Solution
When running the method, volumes are generally	• Ensure that the method uses Column Volume (CV) as base unit
smaller or larger than expect- ed	• Verify that all parameter settings that need man- ual adjustments after the conversion are updated and
	• Review all text edited phases to locate system parameters that must be edited.
	For more information, see Section 3.6 Scale or convert methods, on page 69.

## A column cannot be selected when converting and scaling a method

The table below describes how to solve problems when a column cannot be selected for conversion and scaling of a method.

Problem description	Solution	
When converting the method including scaling of the col- umn, the field for column scaling is inactive	The reason for this may be that either the option <b>Scale</b> was not selected, or that the <b>Any</b> column was selected in the original method. If <b>Scale</b> was selected, either	
	• select a column in the original method and repeat the conversion	
	or	
	<ul> <li>convert the method to the new system first and select a column in the converted method after- wards.</li> </ul>	

## Print screen does not send a copy of the screen to the printer

The table below describes how to solve a printing problem:

Problem description	Solution
The <b>Print Screen</b> command only makes a copy of the screen to the clipboard and not to the default printer.	If you want to print the view on the screen, press the <b>Print Screen</b> key and paste the im- age from the clipboard into an appropriate program, such as Microsoft <sup>™</sup> Paint, and then print out the image.

## Inappropriate inlet settings for CIP or preparation

The table below describes how to ensure that the inlet settings are correct for a CIP or preparation phase:

Problem d	escription	Solution
When a CIP or preparation phase (CIP column, CIP system, Prepare column or Prepare system) is started, inlets that are not defined in the phase are briefly used.		Check which inlets are chosen in <i>Method Settings</i> . Choose the same inlets as required for the CIP or preparation phase.
	and it will normally not cause any problems.	

## 10.2 System Error Reports

## Introduction

The *Generate System Error Report Wizard* is used to generate problem reports. The report can provide useful background information for the support staff when trying to provide solutions to problems or suggestions for improved system performance.

### Step 1: Create an error report

1

This table below describes how to activate the *Generate System Error Report Wizard* and create a report:

#### Step Action

 Choose the *Reports:Create System Error Report* menu command in the *Administration* module<sup>1</sup>.

#### Result: The Generate System Error Report Wizard opens.

- **Note:** If an error occurs during a method run you can also start the wizard by clicking the *Report* button in the error message dialog.
- Click the **Next** button.

You can also create an error report from System Control by choosing System:Create System Error Report. A system must be connected. The report will be created for the connected system and step 2 in the instruction above will be omitted.

# Step Action 2 The Select Systems dialog is displayed, showing all accessible systems. Tip: In this and all subsequent dialogs you can always click the Back button to return to previous dialogs and change the entries. • Select the system that the error is connected to. • Click the Next button. Note: If the problem is general, related to the UNICORN software and

If the problem is general, related to the UNICORN software and cannot be connected to a specific system you do not have to select a system in this step. Ensure that the empty space above the first system is selected (as illustrated below) and click *Next* to proceed. However, it is an advantage in subsequent troubleshooting if at least one system can be referenced.

Select Systems			
	Select system	to make a report on	
	SystemC	L <del>S</del>	
Print Preview		< Back Next >	Cancel

3

The *Error Description* dialog opens. Add the following information:

- A short description of the problem.
- The circumstances under which the problem occurs.
- The consequences of the problem.

Click the *Next* button.

Step	Action				
4	The <i>Error Reproducibility</i> dialog opens.				
	• Specify whether the problem is reproducible or not. Select one of these alternatives:				
	<ul> <li>Yes         (Provide a short description in the text box of how the problem can be reproduced.)     </li> </ul>				
	- No				
	- Unknown.				
	Click the <i>Next</i> button.				
	Result: The File Attachment dialog opens.				
5	Go to step 2 below.				

## Step 2: Attach example files

You can attach results, methods and/or UNICORN log files to the problem report. The table below describes how to attach a file:

#### Step Action

1 The *File Attachments* dialog box is displayed:

		yotom Log o	NICONN LOG		Add Remove
Z Comp	iter and Oper	ating System	information		
	iter and oper	aung system	monnauon		

Step	Action
2	• Depending on the character of the file to be attached, select the appropriate tab: <i>Result, Method, System Log</i> or <i>UNICORN Log</i> .

- Attach a file:
  - Click the **Add** button.
  - Select a file in the dialog and click the **Attach** button.

*Result*: The selected file is added to the tab in the *File Attachments* dialog.

Capt	Method	System Log D07	UNICORN Log	Add.
<ul> <li>Caption</li> <li>Caption</li> </ul>	o adhere I o adhere I	008 009		Remov
	, C			
stem info	ormation er and O	perating Syste	em information	

Tip: To remove a file from the tab, select the checkbox and click the *Remove* button.

When attaching the **UNICORN Log**, a separate dialog will open. Choose the time period for the attached log.

Attach	UNICORN Log	
From:	5/23/2009	~
To:	6/ 3/2009	~
	OK	Cancel

Step	Action
3	To include more information in the report, select the appropriate check boxes in the <b>System information</b> field. <b>Computer and Operating System information</b>
	A summary of the computer and operating system information, for example type of processor, processor speed, RAM, hard disk capacity and printer. Integrity check
	When UNICORN is installed a checksum calculation is performed on the stationary files (*.dll and *.exe) for the system. An integrity check means that a new checksum calculation is performed for the same files in their folders. This new calculated value is compared to the checksum value obtained during installation. The results of the comparison are presented in the report and any deviations are included.
	Click the <i>Next</i> button.
	Result: The Generate System Error Report dialog is displayed.
4	Go to step 3 below.

## Step 3: Generate and save the report

The table below describes how to generate and save the report.

Step	Action
1	By default, the report is saved as a zip file in the UNICORN folder on your local computer.
	If you want to save the report in another location, click the <b>Browse</b> button and select a destination folder.
2	You also have these options:
	• Click the <i>Preview</i> button to open the report in Notepad.
	• Click the <i>Print</i> button to print the report without any preview.
3	Click the <i>Finish</i> button.
	Result: The report is generated and saved and the wizard dialog closes.

## Index

## Α

Add runs DoE, 166 Scouting, 114 Affinity chromatography Predefined method, 81 Alarms Available monitors. 332 General description, 330 Insert alarm in method, 331 Anion exchange Predefined method. 82 ANOVA (analysis of variance) table Design of Experiments, 187 Auto Hide **Optional Method Editor** panes, 18

### B

Barcodes Column identification, 261 Base instruction CV (Column volume), 296 Edit settings, 297 Text instructions. 296 Time. 296 Volume, 296 Blocks Adding, 302 Copy/paste, 303 Deleting, 308 Import from other methods. 304 Moving, 306 Rename, 307 Text editing, 300 Breakpoints In methods, 350 **BufferPro** Considerations when preparing buffers, 226 Create method using, 206 Create recipe, 208 Delete recipe, 214

Edit recipe, 208 Explore proportions, 219 Export recipe, 222 Import recipe, 224 Overview, 204 pH ranges, 227 Predefined buffers, anion exchanae. 205 Predefined buffers, cation exchange, 205 Predefined recipes, 227 Print recipe, 216, 217 Rename recipe, 212 Workflow, 204 **Buffers** Anion exchange, 205 Calculate composition of, 219 Cation exchange, 205 Considerations when preparing, 226 pH ranges, 227 Predefined, 205

## С

Cation exchange Predefined method, 82 Chromatofocusing Predefined method, 83 CIP Column, maintenance method, 85 Column, predefined phase, 88 System, maintenance method, 86 System, predefined phase, 88 Column CIP Maintenance method. 85 Predefined phase, 88 Column Handling Barcodes, 261 Column types, 247 Individual columns, 260 Overview, 242

Registering new individual columns 262 Workflow, 246 Column list Importing predefined column types, 258 Column performance test Maintenance method, 85 Predefined phase. 88 Column preparation Maintenance method, 85 Predefined phase. 88 Columns Adding or editing notes, 268 Barcodes, 261 Column Handling Overview, 242 Column Handling Workflow. 246 Column performance test, 276 Column types, 247 Create an AxiChrom column tvpe, 280 Create new column tvpe, 248 Deleting column types, 253 Deletina individual columns, 270 Editing column type, 251 Editing individual columns, 268 Exporting column types, 254 Exporting individual columns, 271 Find an individual column. 266 Handling individual columns, 260 Importing column types. 256 Importing individual columns, 271 Importing new column lists, 258 Notification limits. 269 Performance report, 277 Predefined column types, 248

Preparing an Intelligent Packing method. 283 Printing column type information. 258 Printing individual column information, 275 Registering new individual columns, 262 Scale a method for use with another column type, 73 Unable to select for method scalina. 351 View column history, 274 Column types Create new column type, 248 Deleting, 253 Editing, 251 Exporting, 254 Importing, 256 Predefined column types, 248 Printing information, 258 Column volume (CV) Base instruction, 296 Column wash Predefined phase, 88 Correlation matrix Design of Experiments, 189 CV (Column volume) Base instruction, 296

## D

Desaltina Predefined method. 83 Design of Experiments Add factors in experimental design, 140 Add responses, 138, 164 Add runs, 166 Analysis, advanced, 182 Analysis, basic, 174 ANOVA (analysis of variance) table, 187 Change experimental desian, 145 Check data, 170 Coefficient plot, 180 Correlation matrix, 189 Create report, 200

Delete responses from model 165 Edit model, 190 Evaluation of results. overview, 158 Evaluation of single runs. 160 Experimental design, setup. 129 Experimental designs, 123 Fractional Factorial desian. 122 Full Factorial design, 122 Generate model. 163 Interaction plot, 184 Main effects plot, 187 Model curvature, 173, 183 Models, overview, 125 Multiple scouting runs, 150 Normal probability plot of residuals, 173, 179 Observed vs predicted plot, 186 Open result, 162 Optimization designs, 123 Optimize response values. 197 Outliers, 170 Overview, 117 Predict response values, 196 Print method, 156 Print report, 202 Replace run results, 167 Replicate plot, 171 Report, creating, 200 Report, printing, 202 Residual vs run order plot, 184 Residual vs variable plot, 182 Response surface plot, 194 Summary of Fit plot, 176 View scouting scheme, 155 Workflow, 127 Documentation ÄKTA avant. 12 Downscale Scale a method for a smaller column type, 73

## E

Edit BufferPro recipe, 208 Column, individual, 268 Column type, 251 DoE model. 190 Method notes, 55 Method outline, 43 Method phases, 37 Method aueue. 235 Scouting scheme, 106 Text instructions, 311 Variables 320 Electronic signature Signing a method, 92 Elution Predefined phase, 88 End Block Text instruction, 300 Eauilibration Predefined phase, 87 Evaluation DoE results, overview, 158 Single DoE runs, 160 Evaluation procedures Include after run, 57 Experimental design Add factors in DoE, 140 Add responses in DoE, 138 Change design in DoE, 145 Design types in UNI-CORN. 123 Setup in DoE. 129 Exporting BufferPro recipes, 222 Column types, 254 Individual columns, 271 Methods, 95 Phases, 95

## F

Fractional Factorial design Description, 122 Fraction collection Overview, 89 Setup, 90 Full Factorial design Description, 122
## G

Gel filtration Predefined method, 83 Gradients Gradient breakpoints, 329 Length as variable, 328 Linear, 327 Step, 327 Text instructions, 329

### Η

Help Text instructions, 309 Viewing, 19 Hold Insert instruction, 341 Text instruction, 340 Hold until Insert instruction, 341 Text instruction, 341 Hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC) Predefined method, 84

#### 

Importing Blocks from other methods, 304 BufferPro recipe, 224 Column types, 256 Individual columns. 271 Methods, 101 Phases, 99 Predefined column types, 258 Individual columns Adding or editing notes, 268 Column Logbook, 260 Column performance test, 276 Deleting, 270 Editing, 268 Exporting, 271 Finding, 266 Importing, 271 Notification limits, 269 Performance report, 277 Printing information, 275 View column history, 274

Instrument Components, 348 Instrument configuration, 348 Intelligent Packing Predefined method, 86 Predefined phase, 88 Ion exchange Predefined method, 82

#### Μ

Maintenance Generate system error report, 353 Maintenance methods Column CIP. 85 Column performance test. 85 Column preparation, 85 System CIP, 86 System preparation, 86 Messaae Text instruction, 343 Method blocks Adding, 302 Block length, 300 Copvina, 303 Deleting, 308 Hide instructions, 301 Import from other methods, 304 Moving, 306 Rename, 307 View instructions, 301 Method Editor General interface description, 15 Optional panes, 17 Overview, 26 Saving a method, 63 Saving a phase, 65 Tools available in, 14 Viewing help topics, 19 Method notes Add to method. 55 Edit. 55 Method outline Description, 21 Duration time and volume, 60

Edit method outline, 43 Method aueues. 229 Change method order, 240 Create, 231 Delete method from, 239 Deleting, 236 Editing, 235 Insert method into, 238 Mulitple systems, 231 Opening, 235 Methods Add notes. 55 Affinity chromatography, 81 Anion exchange, 82 Breakpoints in, 350 BufferPro, using, 206 Cation exchange, 82 Chromatofocusing, 83 CIP mehods, 352 Convert a method to another system type, 69 Convert and scale a method for another system type and column type, 73 Create new method, 30 Definition. 20 Desalting, 83 Duration time and volume. 60 Edit method outline, 43 Edit methods. 37 Edit notes. 55 Electronic signature, 92 Empty methods, 24 Evaluation procedures, include, 57 Export a method, 95 Export as text, 97 Gel filtration. 83 Hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC), 84 Import a method, 101 Intelligent Packing, 86 Maintentance methods. predefined, 85 Method outline, 43 Open a method, 32 Predefined methods, 24, 81 Prepare methods, 352

Print duration time and volume 60 Printing, 79 Print variables, 60 Result name and location. 52 Reverse phase chromatography (RPC), 84 Savina. 63 Saving a phase, 65 Start protocol, setup, 54 Structure of. 21 Syntax errors in, 348 Text editing, 286 Troubleshooting, 347 Unexpected results from converted methods. 350 Variables, 315 View variables, 60 Method settings Predefined phase, 87 Method variables Viewing, 315 Model curvature Design of Experiments, 173, 179.183

### Ν

Notes Column notes, 268 Method notes, 55

### Ρ

Pause Insert instruction, 341 Text instruction, 340 Phase properties Edit phase, 37 Help, 36 Phases CIP phases, 352 Column CIP, 88 Column performance test, 88 Column preparation, 88 Column wash, 88 Deleting phases from library, 67 Edit phases, 37 Elution. 88

Equilibration, 87 Export a phase, 95 Help. 36 Import a phase, 99 Intelligent Packing, 88 Method settings, 87 Phase library, 349 Phase properties, 37, 347, 348 Predefined phases, 24, 87 Prepare phases, 352 Sample application. 87 Syntax errors in, 348 System CIP, 88 System preparation, 88 Text editing, 300, 348 pH ranae BufferPro predefined buffers, 227 Common buffers, 205 Plots Coefficient plot, DoE, 180 Interaction plot, DoE, 184 Main effects plot, DoE, 187 Normal probability plot of residuals. DoE. 173. 179 Observed vs predicted plot, DoE. 186 Replicate plot, DoE, 171 Residual vs run order plot, DoE. 184 Residual vs variable plot, DoE, 182 Response surface plot, DoE, 194 Summary of Fit, DoE, 176 Printing BufferPro recipe, 216, 217 Column performance report, 277 Column type information, 258 DoE methods, 156 DoE report, 202 Individual column information. 275 Method duration time and variables, 60 Methods. 79 Print screen, 351

Response surface plot, DoE, 194 Problem reports Generate system error report, 353

## R

Report System error report, 353 Response surface plot Generating in DoE, 194 Response values Optimize in DoE, 197 Predicting in DoE, 196 Result Name and location, 52 Open DoE result, 162 Reverse phase chromatography (RPC) Predefined method, 84

# S

Sample application Predefined phase, 87 Scoutina Add runs, 114 Add variable, 111 Change variable values, 109, 113 Delete runs, 114 Delete variable, 111 Edit variable, 111 Overview, 104 Usage, 104 Variables in, 111 Workflow, 104 Scouting scheme Add runs, 114 Delete runs, 114 Editing, 106 How to set up, 106 View in DoE, 155 Set mark Insert instruction, 345 Usage, 344 Start protocol Set up start protocol, 54 Syntax errors Icons in text instructions. 293

In methods, 348 In phases, 348 In text instructions, 348 System Components, 348 Instrument configuration, 348 System CIP Maintenance method, 86 Predefined phase, 88 System preparation Maintenance method, 86 Predefined phase, 88

#### T

Text editing Blocks, 300 Help texts, 309 Methods, 286 Phases, 300 Text instructions, 288 Text instructions Add a new instruction, 309 Alarm instructions, 331 Base instruction, 296 Change, 312 Change and Replace, differences, 312 Delete instructions, 314 Delta peak settings, 338 Edit an instruction, 311 End Block. 300 Gradient breakpoints, 329 Gradient instructions. 329 Help. 309 Hold instruction, 340 Hold until. 341 Icons and text formats, 293 Linear gradient, 327 Message, 343 Message instructions, 343 Move an instruction. 313 Pause instruction, 340 Replace, 312 Set mark, 344 Step gradient, 327 Syntax errors in, 348 Text editing a method, 288 Text instructions pane, 290

Text method symbols, 293 Watch instructions, 333 Watch parameters, 337 Watch parameter test options, 335 Time Base instruction, 296 Tools In Method Editor, 14 Troubleshooting Methods, 347

# U

Upscale Scale a method for a larger column type, 73

## V

Variables Breakpoints or gradient lengths, 319 Defining, 318 Deleting, 320 Edit values, 324 Identification in text instructions, 316, 317 Method variables, 315 Renaming, 320 Scouting, use in, 111 Variable names, 317 Viewing, 315 Volume Base instruction, 296

#### W

Warnings Compared to Alarms, 330 Watch instructions Actions, 336 Air sensors, 339 Delta peak settings, 338 Description, 333 Insert instruction, 333 Parameter test options, 335 Signals available, 335 Watch parameters Delta peak settings, 338 Watch parameters instructions Insert text instruction, 337

For local office contact information, visit www.gelifesciences.com/contact

GE Healthcare Bio-Sciences AB Björkgatan 30 751 84 Uppsala Sweden

www.gelifesciences.com/unicorn

GE, imagination at work and GE monogram are trademarks of General Electric Company.

ÄKTA, AxiChrom, Drop Design, HiTrap, Mono Q and UNICORN are trademarks of GE Healthcare companies.

All third party trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

© 2009 - 2011 General Electric Company – All rights reserved. First published Sep. 2009

All goods and services are sold subject to the terms and conditions of sale of the company within GE Healthcare which supplies them. A copy of these terms and conditions is available on request. Contact your local GE Healthcare representative for the most current information.

UNICORN: Any use of this software is subject to GE Healthcare Standard Software End-User License Agreement for Life Sciences Software Products.

GE Healthcare Europe GmbH Munzinger Strasse 5, D-79111 Freiburg, Germany

GE Healthcare UK Limited Amersham Place, Little Chalfont, Buckinghamshire, HP7 9NA, UK

GE Healthcare Bio-Sciences Corp. 800 Centennial Avenue, P.O. Box 1327, Piscataway, NJ 08855-1327, USA

GE Healthcare Japan Corporation Sanken Bldg.3-25-1, Hyakunincho Shinjuku-ku, Tokyo 169-0073, Japan

